### **INTEGRATED CIRCUITS**

# DATA SHEET



## **SAA7118**

Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

Preliminary specification Supersedes data of 2000 Nov 27 File under Integrated Circuits, IC22 2001 May 30





**SAA7118** 

| CONTE      | NTS  | 11           | LIMITING VALUES  |
|------------|--|--------------|--|
| 1          | FEATURES   | 12           | THERMAL CHARACTERISTICS  |
|            |  | 13           | CHARACTERISTICS  |
| 1.1<br>1.2 | Video acquisition/clock Video decoder                            | 14           | APPLICATION INFORMATION  |
| 1.3        | Component video processing                                       | 15           | I <sup>2</sup> C-BUS DESCRIPTION   |
| 1.4        | Video scaler   | _            |  |
| 1.5        | Vertical Blanking Interval (VBI) data decoder                    | 15.1         | I <sup>2</sup> C-bus format  |
|            | and slicer   | 15.2<br>15.3 | I <sup>2</sup> C-bus details   |
| 1.6        | Audio clock generation   | 15.5         | Programming register RGB/Y-P <sub>B</sub> -P <sub>R</sub> component input processing |
| 1.7        | Digital I/O interfaces   | 15.4         | Interrupt mask registers   |
| 1.8        | Miscellaneous  | 15.5         | Programming register audio clock generation  |
| 2          | APPLICATIONS   | 15.6         | Programming register VBI-data slicer   |
| 3          | GENERAL DESCRIPTION  | 15.7         | Programming register interfaces and scaler   |
| 4          | QUICK REFERENCE DATA   |              | part   |
| 5          | ORDERING INFORMATION   | 16           | PROGRAMMING START SET-UP   |
| 6          | BLOCK DIAGRAM  | 16.1         | Decoder part   |
| 7          | PINNING  | 16.2<br>16.3 | Component video part and interrupt mask  Audio clock generation part                 |
| 8          | FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION   | 16.4         | Data slicer and data type control part   |
|            |  | 16.5         | Scaler and interfaces  |
| 8.1<br>8.2 | Decoder Component video processing                               | 17           | PACKAGE OUTLINES   |
| 8.3        | Decoder output formatter   | 18           |  |
| 8.4        | Scaler   |              | SOLDERING  |
| 8.5        | VBI-data decoder and capture                                     | 18.1         | Introduction to soldering surface mount  |
|            | (subaddresses 40H to 7FH)  | 18.2         | packages<br>Reflow soldering   |
| 8.6        | Image port output formatter                                      | 18.3         | Wave soldering   |
|            | (subaddresses 84H to 87H)  | 18.4         | Manual soldering   |
| 8.7        | Audio clock generation   | 18.5         | Suitability of surface mount IC packages for   |
|            | (subaddresses 30H to 3FH)  |              | wave and reflow soldering methods  |
| 9          | INPUT/OUTPUT INTERFACES AND PORTS                                | 19           | DATA SHEET STATUS  |
| 9.1        | Analog terminals   | 20           | DEFINITIONS  |
| 9.2<br>9.3 | Audio clock signals  Clock and real-time synchronization signals | 21           | DISCLAIMERS  |
| 9.4        | Interrupt handling   | 22           | PURCHASE OF PHILIPS I <sup>2</sup> C COMPONENTS                                      |
| 9.5        | Video expansion port (X-port)                                    | 22           | FUNCTIAGE OF FITTERS TO COMPONENTS   |
| 9.6        | Image port (I-port)  |              |  |
| 9.7        | Host port for 16-bit extension of video data I/O (H-port)        |              |  |
| 9.8        | Basic input and output timing diagrams I-port and X-port         |              |  |
| 10         | BOUNDARY SCAN TEST   |              |  |
| 10.1       | Initialization of boundary scan circuit                          |              |  |
| 10.2       | Device identification codes                                      |              |  |

**SAA7118** 

### 1 FEATURES

### 1.1 Video acquisition/clock

- Up to sixteen analog CVBS, split as desired (all of the CVBS inputs optionally can be used to convert e.g. Vestigial Side Band (VSB) signals)
- Up to eight analog Y + C inputs, split as desired
- Up to four analog component inputs, with embedded or separate sync, split as desired
- Four on-chip anti-aliasing filters in front of the Analog-to-Digital Converters (ADCs)
- Automatic Clamp Control (ACC) for CVBS, Y and C (or VSB) and component signals
- · Switchable white peak control
- Four 9-bit low noise CMOS ADCs running at twice the oversampling rate (27 MHz)
- Fully programmable static gain or Automatic Gain Control (AGC), matching to the particular signal properties
- On-chip line-locked clock generation in accordance with "ITU 601"
- Requires only one crystal (32.11 or 24.576 MHz) for all standards
- · Horizontal and vertical sync detection.

### 1.2 Video decoder

- Digital PLL for synchronization and clock generation from all standards and non-standard video sources e.g. consumer grade VTR
- Automatic detection of any supported colour standard
- Luminance and chrominance signal processing for PAL B, G, D, H, I and N, combination PAL N, PAL M, NTSC M, NTSC-Japan, NTSC 4.43 and SECAM
- Adaptive 2/4-line comb filter for two dimensional chrominance/luminance separation, also with VTR signals
  - Increased luminance and chrominance bandwidth for all PAL and NTSC standards
  - Reduced cross colour and cross luminance artefacts
- · PAL delay line for correcting PAL phase errors
- Brightness Contrast Saturation (BCS) adjustment, separately for composite and baseband signals
- User programmable sharpness control
- Detection of copy-protected signals according to the macrovision standard, indicating level of protection



 Independent gain and offset adjustment for raw data path.

### 1.3 Component video processing

- RGB component inputs
- Y-P<sub>B</sub>-P<sub>R</sub> component inputs
- Fast blanking between CVBS and synchronous component inputs
- Digital RGB to Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> matrix.

### 1.4 Video scaler

- Horizontal and vertical downscaling and upscaling to randomly sized windows
- Horizontal and vertical scaling range: variable zoom to <sup>1</sup>/<sub>64</sub> (icon) (note: H and V zoom are restricted by the transfer data rates)
- Anti-alias and accumulating filter for horizontal scaling
- Vertical scaling with linear phase interpolation and accumulating filter for anti-aliasing (6-bit phase accuracy)
- Horizontal phase correct up and downscaling for improved signal quality of scaled data, especially for compression and video phone applications, with 6-bit phase accuracy (1.2 ns step width)
- Two independent programming sets for scaler part, to define two 'ranges' per field or sequences over frames
- Fieldwise switching between decoder part and expansion port (X-port) input
- Brightness, contrast and saturation controls for scaled outputs.

# 1.5 Vertical Blanking Interval (VBI) data decoder and slicer

 Versatile VBI-data decoder, slicer, clock regeneration and byte synchronization e.g. for World Standard Teletext (WST), North-American Broadcast Text System (NABTS), close caption, Wide Screen Signalling (WSS) etc.

**SAA7118** 

### 1.6 Audio clock generation

- Generation of a field-locked audio master clock to support a constant number of audio clocks per video field
- Generation of an audio serial and left/right (channel) clock signal.

### 1.7 Digital I/O interfaces

- Real-time signal port (R port), inclusive continuous line-locked reference clock and real-time status information supporting RTC level 3.1 (refer to document "RTC Functional Specification" for details)
- Bidirectional expansion port (X-port) with half duplex functionality (D1), 8-bit Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub>
  - Output from decoder part, real-time and unscaled
  - Input to scaler part, e.g. video from MPEG decoder (extension to 16-bit possible)
- Video image port (I-port) configurable for 8-bit data (extension to 16-bit possible) in master mode (own clock), or slave mode (external clock), with auxiliary timing and handshake signals
- · Discontinuous data streams supported
- 32-word × 4-byte FIFO register for video output data
- 28-word × 4-byte FIFO register for decoded VBI-data output
- Scaled 4:2:2, 4:1:1, 4:2:0, 4:1:0 Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> output
- Scaled 8-bit luminance only and raw CVBS data output
- · Sliced, decoded VBI-data output.

### 1.8 Miscellaneous

- · Power-on control
- 5 V tolerant digital inputs and I/O ports
- Software controlled power saving standby modes supported
- Programming via serial I<sup>2</sup>C-bus, full read back ability by an external controller, bit rate up to 400 kbits/s
- Boundary scan test circuit complies with the "IEEE Std. 1149.b1 1994".

### 2 APPLICATIONS

- · PC-video capture and editing
- · Personal video recorders (time shifting)
- · Cable, terrestrial, and satellite set-top boxes
- Internet terminals
- Flat-panel monitors
- DVD-recordable players
- AV-ready hard-disk drivers
- · Digital televisions/scan conversion
- · Video surveillance/security
- · Video editing/post production
- · Video phones
- · Video projectors
- · Digital VCRs.

### 3 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The SAA7118 is a video capture device for applications at the image port of VGA controllers.

Philips X-VIP is a new multistandard comb filter video decoder chip with additional component processing, providing high quality, optionally scaled, video.

The SAA7118 is a combination of a four-channel analog preprocessing circuit including source selection, anti-aliasing filter and ADC with succeeding decimation filters from 27 to 13.5 MHz data rate. Each preprocessing channel comes with an automatic clamp and gain control. The SAA7118 combines a Clock Generation Circuit (CGC), a digital multistandard decoder containing two-dimensional chrominance/luminance separation by an adaptive comb filter and a high performance scaler, including variable horizontal and vertical up and downscaling and a brightness, contrast and saturation control circuit.

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

It is a highly integrated circuit for desktop video and similar applications. The decoder is based on the principle of line-locked clock decoding and is able to decode the colour of PAL, SECAM and NTSC signals into ITU 601 compatible colour component values. The SAA7118 accepts CVBS or S-video (Y/C) as analog inputs from TV or VCR sources, including weak and distorted signals as well as baseband component signals Y-P<sub>B</sub>-P<sub>R</sub> or RGB. An expansion port (X-port) for digital video (bidirectional half duplex, D1 compatible) is also supported to connect to MPEG or video phone codec. At the so called image port (I-port) the SAA7118 supports 8 or 16-bit wide output data with auxiliary reference data for interfacing to VGA controllers.

The target application for the SAA7118 is to capture and scale video images, to be provided as digital video stream through the image port of a VGA controller, for capture to system memory, or just to provide digital baseband video to any picture improvement processing.

The SAA7118 also provides a means for capturing the serially coded data in the vertical blanking interval (VBI-data). Two principal functions are available:

- 1. To capture raw video samples, after interpolation to the required output data rate, via the scaler
- 2. A versatile data slicer (data recovery) unit.

The SAA7118 also incorporates field-locked audio clock generation. This function ensures that there is always the same number of audio samples associated with a field, or a set of fields. This prevents the loss of synchronization between video and audio during capture or playback.

All of the ADCs may be used to digitize a VSB signal for subsequent decoding; a dedicated output port and a selectable VSB clock input is provided.

The circuit is I<sup>2</sup>C-bus controlled (full write/read capability for all programming registers, bit rate up to 400 kbits/s).

### 4 QUICK REFERENCE DATA

| SYMBOL           | PARAMETER                            | CONDITIONS | MIN. | TYP. | MAX. | UNIT |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|------------|------|------|------|------|
| $V_{DDD}$        | digital supply voltage               |            | 3.0  | 3.3  | 3.6  | V    |
| $V_{DDDC}$       | digital core supply voltage          |            | 3.0  | 3.3  | 3.6  | V    |
| $V_{DDA}$        | analog supply voltage                |            | 3.1  | 3.3  | 3.5  | V    |
| T <sub>amb</sub> | ambient temperature                  |            | 0    | _    | 70   | °C   |
| P <sub>A+D</sub> | analog and digital power dissipation | note 1     | _    | 1.1  | 1.35 | W    |

### Note

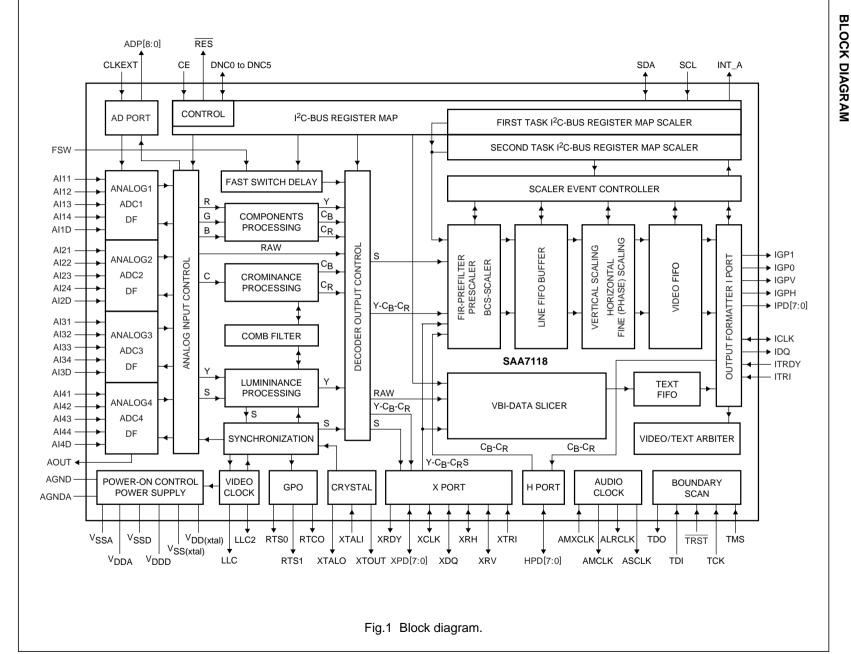
1. Power dissipation is measured in component mode (four ADCs active) and 8-bit image port output mode, expansion port is 3-stated.

### 5 ORDERING INFORMATION

| TYPE     | PACKAGE |  |          |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------|---------|--|----------|--|--|--|--|--|
| NUMBER   | NAME    | DESCRIPTION  | VERSION  |  |  |  |  |  |
| SAA7118E | BGA156  | plastic ball grid array package; 156 balls; body 15 × 15 × 1.15 mm | SOT472-1 |  |  |  |  |  |
| SAA7118H | QFP160  |  |          |  |  |  |  |  |

Preliminary specification

6



# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 7 PINNING

|                    | Р      | IN     | (4)                 |   |  |
|--------------------|--------|--------|---------------------|---|--|
| SYMBOL             | QFP160 | BGA156 | TYPE <sup>(1)</sup> | DESCRIPTION   |  |
| DNC6               | 1      | B2     | 0                   | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing      |  |
| Al41               | 2      | B1     | I                   | analog input 41   |  |
| AGND               | 3      | C2     | Р                   | analog ground   |  |
| V <sub>SSA4</sub>  | 4      | C1     | Р                   | ground for analog inputs Al4x                                       |  |
| Al42               | 5      | D2     | I                   | analog input 42   |  |
| AI4D               | 6      | D3     | I                   | differential input for ADC channel 4 (pins Al41 to Al44)            |  |
| Al43               | 7      | D1     | I                   | analog input 43   |  |
| V <sub>DDA4</sub>  | 8      | D4     | Р                   | analog supply voltage for analog inputs Al4x (3.3 V)                |  |
| V <sub>DDA4A</sub> | 9      | E2     | Р                   | analog supply voltage for analog inputs Al4x (3.3 V)                |  |
| Al44               | 10     | E1     | I                   | analog input 44   |  |
| Al31               | 11     | E3     | I                   | analog input 31   |  |
| V <sub>SSA3</sub>  | 12     | E4     | Р                   | ground for analog inputs Al3x                                       |  |
| Al32               | 13     | F2     | I                   | analog input 32   |  |
| AI3D               | 14     | F1     | I/O                 | differential input for ADC channel 3 (pins Al31 to Al34)            |  |
| Al33               | 15     | F3     | I                   | analog input 33   |  |
| V <sub>DDA3</sub>  | 16     | F4     | Р                   | analog supply voltage for analog inputs Al3x (3.3 V)                |  |
| V <sub>DDA3A</sub> | 17     | G2     | Р                   | analog supply voltage for analog inputs Al3x (3.3 V)                |  |
| Al34               | 18     | G1     | I                   | analog input 34   |  |
| Al21               | 19     | G4     | I                   | analog input 21   |  |
| V <sub>SSA2</sub>  | 20     | НЗ     | Р                   | ground for analog inputs Al2x                                       |  |
| Al22               | 21     | G3     | I                   | analog input 22   |  |
| Al2D               | 22     | H1     | I                   | differential input for ADC channel 2 (pins Al24 to Al21)            |  |
| Al23               | 23     | H2     | I                   | analog input 23   |  |
| V <sub>DDA2</sub>  | 24     | H4     | Р                   | analog supply voltage for analog inputs Al2x                        |  |
| V <sub>DDA2A</sub> | 25     | J1     | Р                   | analog supply voltage for analog inputs Al2x                        |  |
| Al24               | 26     | J3     | I                   | analog input 24   |  |
| Al11               | 27     | J2     | I                   | analog input 11   |  |
| V <sub>SSA1</sub>  | 28     | J4     | Р                   | ground for analog inputs Al1x                                       |  |
| Al12               | 29     | K1     | I                   | analog input 12   |  |
| AI1D               | 30     | K3     | I                   | differential input for ADC channel 1 (pins Al14 to Al11)            |  |
| Al13               | 31     | K2     | I                   | analog input 13   |  |
| V <sub>DDA1</sub>  | 32     | K4     | Р                   | analog supply voltage for analog inputs Al1x (3.3 V)                |  |
| V <sub>DDA1A</sub> | 33     | L1     | Р                   | analog supply voltage for analog inputs Al1x (3.3 V)                |  |
| Al14               | 34     | L3     | I                   | analog input 14   |  |
| AGNDA              | 35     | L2     | Р                   | analog signal ground  |  |
| AOUT               | 36     | M1     | 0                   | analog test output (do not connect)                                 |  |
| V <sub>DDA0</sub>  | 37     | М3     | Р                   | analog supply voltage (3.3 V) for internal clock generation circuit |  |
| V <sub>SSA0</sub>  | 38     | M2     | Р                   | ground for internal Clock Generation Circuit (CGC)                  |  |

**SAA7118** 

|                   | Р      | IN     |                     | DECORPTION   |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------------------|--------|--------|---------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| SYMBOL            | QFP160 | BGA156 | TYPE <sup>(1)</sup> | DESCRIPTION  |  |  |  |  |  |
| DNC13             | 39     | N1     | NC                  | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing   |  |  |  |  |  |
| DNC14             | 40     | N2     | I/pu                | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing   |  |  |  |  |  |
| DNC18             | 41     | P2     | I/O                 | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing   |  |  |  |  |  |
| DNC15             | 42     | N3     | I/pd                | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing   |  |  |  |  |  |
| EXMCLR            | 43     | P3     | I/pd                | external mode clear (with internal pull-down)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| CE                | 44     | N4     | I/pu                | chip enable or reset input (with internal pull-up)   |  |  |  |  |  |
| V <sub>DDD1</sub> | 45     | C5     | Р                   | digital supply voltage 1 (peripheral cells)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| LLC               | 46     | P4     | 0                   | line-locked system clock output (27 MHz nominal)   |  |  |  |  |  |
| V <sub>SSD1</sub> | 47     | D5     | Р                   | digital ground 1 (peripheral cells)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| LLC2              | 48     | N5     | 0                   | line-locked ½ clock output (13.5 MHz nominal)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| RES               | 49     | P5     | 0                   | reset output (active LOW)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $V_{DDD2}$        | 50     | C8     | Р                   | digital supply voltage 2 (core)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| V <sub>SSD2</sub> | 51     | D7     | Р                   | digital ground 2 (core; substrate connection)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| CLKEXT            | 52     | N6     | I                   | external clock input intended for analog-to-digital conversion of VSB signals (36 MHz)   |  |  |  |  |  |
| ADP8              | 53     | P6     | 0                   | MSB of direct analog-to-digital converted output data (VSB)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ADP7              | 54     | M6     | 0                   | MSB – 1 of direct analog-to-digital converted output data (VSB)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ADP6              | 55     | L6     | 0                   | MSB – 2 of direct analog-to-digital converted output data (VSB)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ADP5              | 56     | N7     | 0                   | MSB – 3 of direct analog-to-digital converted output data (VSB)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ADP4              | 57     | P7     | 0                   | MSB – 4 of direct analog-to-digital converted output data (VSB)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ADP3              | 58     | L7     | 0                   | MSB – 5 of direct analog-to-digital converted output data (VSB)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $V_{DDD3}$        | 59     | C9     | Р                   | digital supply voltage 3 (peripheral cells)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ADP2              | 60     | M7     | 0                   | MSB – 6 of direct analog-to-digital converted output data (VSB)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ADP1              | 61     | P8     | 0                   | MSB – 7 of direct analog-to-digital converted output data (VSB)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ADP0              | 62     | N8     | 0                   | LSB of direct analog-to-digital converted output data (VSB)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| V <sub>SSD3</sub> | 63     | D9     | Р                   | digital ground 3 (peripheral cells)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| INT_A             | 64     | P9     | O/od                | I <sup>2</sup> C-bus interrupt flag (LOW if any enabled status bit has changed)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $V_{DDD4}$        | 65     | C10    | Р                   | digital supply voltage 4 (core)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| SCL               | 66     | N9     | I                   | serial clock input (I <sup>2</sup> C-bus)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| V <sub>SSD4</sub> | 67     | D10    | Р                   | digital ground 4 (core)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| SDA               | 68     | P10    | I/O/od              | serial data input/output (I <sup>2</sup> C-bus)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| RTS0              | 69     | M10    | 0                   | real-time status or sync information, controlled by subaddresses 11H and 12H   |  |  |  |  |  |
| RTS1              | 70     | N10    | 0                   | real-time status or sync information, controlled by subaddresses 11H and 12H   |  |  |  |  |  |
| RTCO              | 71     | L10    | O/st/pd             | real-time control output; contains information about actual system clock frequency, field rate, odd/even sequence, decoder status, subcarrier frequency and phase and PAL sequence (see document "RTC Functional Description", available on request); the RTCO pin is enabled via I <sup>2</sup> C-bus bit RTCE; see notes 5, 6 and Table 35 |  |  |  |  |  |
| AMCLK             | 72     | P11    | 0                   | audio master clock output, up to 50% of crystal clock  |  |  |  |  |  |

8

2001 May 30

SAA7118

|                   | Р      | IN     |                     |  |  |
|-------------------|--------|--------|---------------------|--|--|
| SYMBOL            | QFP160 | BGA156 | TYPE <sup>(1)</sup> | DESCRIPTION  |  |
| V <sub>DDD5</sub> | 73     | D12    | Р                   | digital supply voltage 5 (peripheral cells)  |  |
| ASCLK             | 74     | N11    | 0                   | audio serial clock output  |  |
| ALRCLK            | 75     | P12    | O/st/pd             | audio left/right clock output; can be strapped to supply via a 3.3 k $\Omega$ resisto to indicate that the default 24.576 MHz crystal (ALRCLK = 0; internal pull-down) has been replaced by a 32.110 MHz crystal (ALRCLK = 1); notes 5 and 7 |  |
| AMXCLK            | 76     | M12    | I                   | audio master external clock input  |  |
| ITRDY             | 77     | N12    | I                   | target ready input for image port data   |  |
| DNC0              | 78     | P13    | I/pu                | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing: scan input   |  |
| DNC16             | 79     | N13    | NC                  | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing   |  |
| DNC17             | 80     | N14    | NC                  | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing   |  |
| DNC19             | 81     | -      | NC                  | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing   |  |
| DNC20             | 82     | _      | NC                  | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing   |  |
| FSW               | 83     | M13    | I/pd                | fast switch (blanking) with internal pull-down inserts component inputs into CVBS signal   |  |
| ICLK              | 84     | M14    | I/O                 | clock output signal for image port, or optional asynchronous back-end clock input  |  |
| IDQ               | 85     | L13    | 0                   | output data qualifier for image port (optional: gated clock output)  |  |
| ITRI              | 86     | L12    | I/(O)               | image port output control signal, affects all input port pins inclusive ICLK, enable and active polarity is under software control (bits IPE in subaddress 87H); output path used for testing: scan output                                   |  |
| IGP0              | 87     | L14    | 0                   | general purpose output signal 0; image port (controlled by subaddresses 84H and 85H)   |  |
| V <sub>SSD5</sub> | 88     | D11    | Р                   | digital ground 5 (peripheral cells)  |  |
| IGP1              | 89     | K13    | 0                   | general purpose output signal 1; image port (controlled by subaddresses 84H and 85H)   |  |
| IGPV              | 90     | K14    | 0                   | multi purpose vertical reference output signal; image port (controlled by subaddresses 84H and 85H)  |  |
| IGPH              | 91     | K12    | 0                   | multi purpose horizontal reference output signal; image port (controlled by subaddresses 84H and 85H)  |  |
| IPD7              | 92     | K11    | 0                   | MSB of image port data output  |  |
| IPD6              | 93     | J13    | 0                   | MSB – 1 of image port data output  |  |
| IPD5              | 94     | J14    | 0                   | MSB – 2 of image port data output  |  |
| V <sub>DDD6</sub> | 95     | F12    | Р                   | digital supply voltage 6 (core)  |  |
| V <sub>SSD6</sub> | 96     | F11    | Р                   | digital ground 6 (core)  |  |
| IPD4              | 97     | H13    | 0                   | MSB – 3 of image port data output  |  |
| IPD3              | 98     | H14    | 0                   | MSB – 4 of image port data output  |  |
| IPD2              | 99     | H11    | 0                   | MSB – 5 of image port data output  |  |
| IPD1              | 100    | G12    | 0                   | MSB – 6 of image port data output  |  |
| V <sub>DDD7</sub> | 101    | H12    | Р                   | digital supply voltage 7 (peripheral cells)  |  |
| IPD0              | 102    | G14    | 0                   | LSB of image port data output  |  |

**SAA7118** 

| 0.41501            | Р      | IN     | <b>-</b> >45-(4)    |   |  |
|--------------------|--------|--------|---------------------|---|--|
| SYMBOL             | QFP160 | BGA156 | TYPE <sup>(1)</sup> | DESCRIPTION   |  |
| HPD7               | 103    | G13    | I/O                 | MSB of host port data I/O, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ input for expansion port, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ output for image port  |  |
| V <sub>SSD7</sub>  | 104    | G11    | Р                   | digital ground 7 (peripheral cells)   |  |
| HPD6               | 105    | F14    | I/O                 | $MSB-1$ of host port data I/O, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ input for expansion port, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ output for image port  |  |
| $V_{DDD8}$         | 106    | J12    | Р                   | digital supply voltage 8 (core)   |  |
| HPD5               | 107    | F13    | I/O                 | MSB $-$ 2 of host port data I/O, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ input for expansion port, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ output for image port  |  |
| V <sub>SSD8</sub>  | 108    | J11    | Р                   | digital ground 8 (core)   |  |
| HPD4               | 109    | E14    | I/O                 | MSB $-$ 3 of host port data I/O, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ input for expansion port, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ output for image port  |  |
| HPD3               | 110    | E12    | I/O                 | MSB $-4$ of host port data I/O, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ input for expansion port, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ output for image port   |  |
| HPD2               | 111    | E13    | I/O                 | MSB $-$ 5 of host port data I/O, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ input for expansion port, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ output for image port  |  |
| HPD1               | 112    | E11    | I/O                 | MSB $-$ 6 of host port data I/O, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ input for expansion port, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ output for image port  |  |
| HPD0               | 113    | D14    | I/O                 | LSB of host port data I/O, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ input for expansion port, extended $C_B$ - $C_R$ output for image port  |  |
| $V_{DDD9}$         | 114    | M4     | Р                   | digital supply voltage 9 (peripheral cells)   |  |
| DNC1               | 115    | D13    | I/pu                | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing: scan input  |  |
| DNC2               | 116    | C14    | l/pu                | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing: scan input  |  |
| DNC7               | 117    | B13    | NC                  | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing  |  |
| DNC8               | 118    | B14    | NC                  | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing  |  |
| DNC11              | 119    | C12    | NC                  | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing  |  |
| DNC12              | 120    | C13    | NC                  | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing  |  |
| DNC21              | 121    | 1      | NC                  | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing  |  |
| DNC22              | 122    | _      | NC                  | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing  |  |
| DNC3               | 123    | A13    | I/pu                | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing: scan input  |  |
| DNC4               | 124    | B12    | 0                   | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing: scan output   |  |
| DNC5               | 125    | A12    | I/pu                | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing: scan input  |  |
| XTRI               | 126    | B11    | I                   | X-port output control signal, affects all X-port pins (XPD7 to XPD0, XRH, XRV, XDQ and XCLK), enable and active polarity is under software control (bits XPE in subaddress 83H) |  |
| XPD7               | 127    | C11    | I/O                 | MSB of expansion port data  |  |
| XPD6               | 128    | A11    | I/O                 | MSB – 1 of expansion port data  |  |
| V <sub>SSD9</sub>  | 129    | L4     | Р                   | digital ground 9 (peripheral cells)   |  |
| XPD5               | 130    | B10    | I/O                 | MSB – 2 of expansion port data  |  |
| XPD4               | 131    | A10    | I/O                 | MSB – 3 of expansion port data  |  |
| V <sub>DDD10</sub> | 132    | M5     | Р                   | digital supply voltage 10 (core)  |  |
| V <sub>SSD10</sub> | 133    | L5     | Р                   | digital ground 10 (core)  |  |

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

| CVMDOL                | Р      | IN     | TVDE(1)             | DESCRIPTION  |  |
|-----------------------|--------|--------|---------------------|--|--|
| SYMBOL                | QFP160 | BGA156 | TYPE <sup>(1)</sup> | DESCRIPTION  |  |
| XPD3                  | 134    | B9     | I/O                 | MSB – 4 of expansion port data   |  |
| XPD2                  | 135    | A9     | I/O                 | MSB – 5 of expansion port data   |  |
| V <sub>DDD11</sub>    | 136    | M8     | Р                   | digital supply voltage 11 (peripheral cells)   |  |
| V <sub>SSD11</sub>    | 137    | L8     | Р                   | digital ground 11 (peripheral cells)   |  |
| XPD1                  | 138    | B8     | I/O                 | MSB – 6 of expansion port data   |  |
| XPD0                  | 139    | A8     | I/O                 | LSB of expansion port data   |  |
| XRV                   | 140    | D8     | I/O                 | vertical reference I/O expansion port  |  |
| XRH                   | 141    | C7     | I/O                 | horizontal reference I/O expansion port  |  |
| V <sub>DDD12</sub>    | 142    | M9     | Р                   | digital supply voltage 12 (core)   |  |
| XCLK                  | 143    | A7     | I/O                 | clock I/O expansion port   |  |
| XDQ                   | 144    | В7     | I/O                 | data qualifier for expansion port  |  |
| V <sub>SSD12</sub>    | 145    | L9     | Р                   | digital ground 12 (core)   |  |
| XRDY                  | 146    | A6     | 0                   | task flag or ready signal from scaler, controlled by XRQT  |  |
| TRST                  | 147    | C6     | l/pu                | test reset input (active LOW), for boundary scan test (with internal pull-up); notes 2, 3 and 4  |  |
| TCK                   | 148    | B6     | I/pu                | test clock for boundary scan test; note 2  |  |
| TMS                   | 149    | D6     | I/pu                | test mode select input for boundary scan test or scan test; note 2   |  |
| TDO                   | 150    | A5     | 0                   | test data output for boundary scan test; note 2  |  |
| V <sub>DDD13</sub>    | 151    | M11    | Р                   | digital supply voltage 13 (peripheral cells)   |  |
| TDI                   | 152    | B5     | I/pu                | test data input for boundary scan test; note 2   |  |
| V <sub>SSD13</sub>    | 153    | L11    | Р                   | digital ground 13 (peripheral cells)   |  |
| V <sub>SS(xtal)</sub> | 154    | A4     | Р                   | ground for crystal oscillator  |  |
| XTALI                 | 155    | B4     | I                   | input terminal for 24.576 MHz (32.11 MHz) crystal oscillator or connection of external oscillator with TTL compatible square wave clock signal |  |
| XTALO                 | 156    | А3     | 0                   | 24.576 MHz (32.11 MHz) crystal oscillator output; not connected if TTL clock input of XTALI is used  |  |
| V <sub>DD(xtal)</sub> | 157    | В3     | Р                   | supply voltage for crystal oscillator  |  |
| XTOUT                 | 158    | A2     | 0                   | crystal oscillator output signal; auxiliary signal   |  |
| DNC9                  | 159    | C3     | NC                  | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing   |  |
| DNC10                 | 160    | C4     | NC                  | do not connect, reserved for future extensions and for testing   |  |

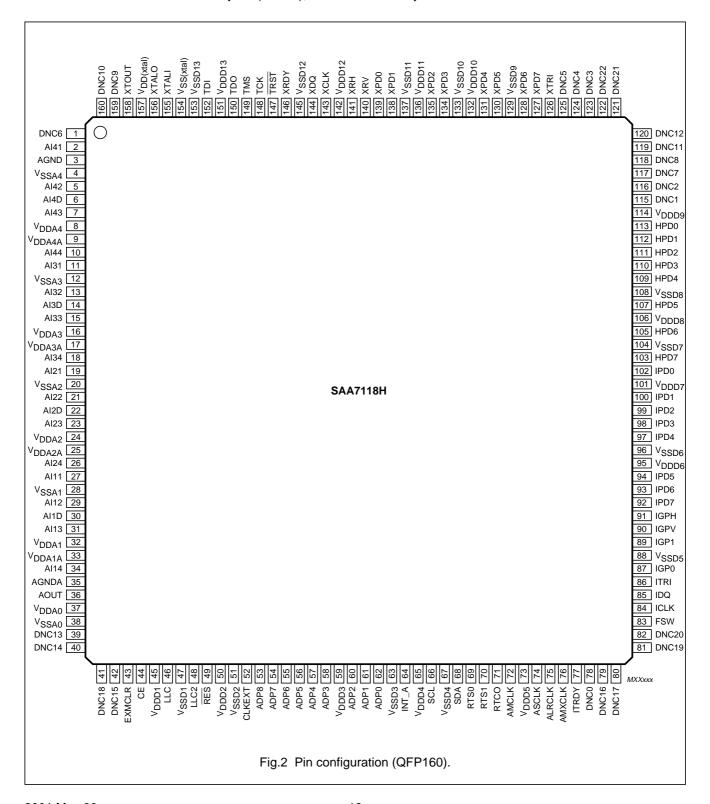
### **Notes**

- 1. I = input, O = output, P = power, NC = not connected, st = strapping, pu = pull-up, pd = pull-down, od = open-drain.
- 2. In accordance with the "IEEE1149.1" standard the pads TDI, TMS, TCK and TRST are input pads with an internal pull-up transistor and TDO is a 3-state output pad.
- 3. For board design without boundary scan implementation connect the TRST pin to ground.
- 4. This pin provides easy initialization of the Boundary Scan Test (BST) circuit. TRST can be used to force the Test Access Port (TAP) controller to the TEST\_LOGIC\_RESET state (normal operation) at once.
- 5. Pin strapping is done by connecting the pin to the supply via a 3.3 k $\Omega$  resistor. During the power-up reset sequence the corresponding pins are switched to input mode to read the strapping level. For the default setting no strapping resistor is necessary (internal pull-down).

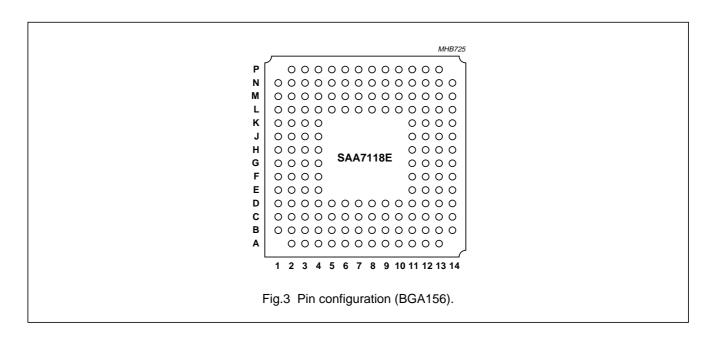
# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

- 6. Pin RTCO operates as I<sup>2</sup>C-bus slave address pin; RTCO = 0 slave address 42H/43H (default); RTCO = 1 slave address 40H/41H.
- 7. Pin ALRCLK: 0 = 24.576 MHz crystal (default); 1 = 32.110 MHz crystal.



**SAA7118** 



|   | 1                  | 2                  | 3                     | 4                     | 5                  | 6      | 7                 | 8                  | 9                  | 10                | 11                 | 12                | 13     | 14     |
|---|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|--------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|--------|--------|
| Α |                    | XTOUT              | XTALO                 | V <sub>SS(xtal)</sub> | TDO                | XRDY   | XCLK              | XPD0               | XPD2               | XPD4              | XPD6               | TEST1             | TEST2  |        |
| В | Al41               | TEST3              | V <sub>DD(xtal)</sub> | XTALI                 | TDI                | TCK    | XDQ               | XPD1               | XPD3               | XPD5              | XTRI               | TEST4             | TEST5  | TEST6  |
| С | V <sub>SSA4</sub>  | AGND               | TEST7                 | TEST8                 | V <sub>DDD1</sub>  | TRST   | XRH               | V <sub>DDD2</sub>  | V <sub>DDD3</sub>  | V <sub>DDD4</sub> | XPD7               | TEST9             | TEST10 | TEST11 |
| D | Al43               | Al42               | AI4D                  | V <sub>DDA4</sub>     | V <sub>SSD1</sub>  | TMS    | V <sub>SSD2</sub> | XRV                | V <sub>SSD3</sub>  | V <sub>SSD4</sub> | V <sub>SSD5</sub>  | V <sub>DDD5</sub> | TEST12 | HPD0   |
| E | AI44               | V <sub>DDA4A</sub> | Al31                  | V <sub>SSA3</sub>     |                    |        |                   |                    |                    |                   | HPD1               | HPD3              | HPD2   | HPD4   |
| F | AI3D               | Al32               | Al33                  | V <sub>DDA3</sub>     |                    |        |                   |                    |                    |                   | V <sub>SSD6</sub>  | V <sub>DDD6</sub> | HPD5   | HPD6   |
| G | Al34               | V <sub>DDA3A</sub> | Al22                  | Al21                  |                    |        |                   |                    |                    |                   | V <sub>SSD7</sub>  | IPD1              | HPD7   | IPD0   |
| н | Al2D               | Al23               | V <sub>SSA2</sub>     | V <sub>DDA2</sub>     |                    |        |                   |                    |                    |                   | IPD2               | V <sub>DDD7</sub> | IPD4   | IPD3   |
| J | V <sub>DDA2A</sub> | Al11               | Al24                  | V <sub>SSA1</sub>     |                    |        |                   |                    |                    |                   | V <sub>SSD8</sub>  | V <sub>DDD8</sub> | IPD6   | IPD5   |
| K | Al12               | Al13               | AI1D                  | V <sub>DDA1</sub>     |                    |        |                   |                    |                    |                   | IPD7               | IGPH              | IGP1   | IGPV   |
| L | V <sub>DDA1A</sub> | AGNDA              | Al14                  | V <sub>SSD9</sub>     | V <sub>SSD10</sub> | ADP6   | ADP3              | V <sub>SSD11</sub> | V <sub>SSD12</sub> | RTCO              | V <sub>SSD13</sub> | ITRI              | IDQ    | IGP0   |
| M | AOUT               | V <sub>SSA0</sub>  | V <sub>DDA0</sub>     | V <sub>DDD9</sub>     | V <sub>DDD10</sub> | ADP7   | ADP2              | V <sub>DDD11</sub> | V <sub>DDD12</sub> | RTS0              | V <sub>DDD13</sub> | AMXCLK            | FSW    | ICLK   |
| N | TEST13             | TEST14             | TEST15                | CE                    | LLC2               | CLKEXT | ADP5              | ADP0               | SCL                | RTS1              | ASCLK              | ITRDY             | TEST16 | TEST17 |
| Р |                    | TEST18             | EXMCLR                | LLC                   | RES                | ADP8   | ADP4              | ADP1               | INT_A              | SDA               | AMCLK              | ALRCLK            | TEST19 |        |

Philips Semiconductors

Preliminary specification

comb filter and component video input

Multistandard video decoder with adaptive

 Table 2
 8-bit/16-bit and alternative pin functional configurations

| PIN <sup>(1)</sup>   | SYMBOL          | 8-BIT<br>INPUT<br>MODES          | 16-BIT INPUT<br>MODES (ONLY<br>FOR I <sup>2</sup> C-BUS<br>PROGRAMMING) | ALTERNATIVE<br>INPUT<br>FUNCTIONS | 8-BIT<br>OUTPUT<br>MODES                                  | 16-BIT OUTPUT<br>MODES (ONLY<br>FOR I <sup>2</sup> C-BUS<br>PROGRAMMING) | ALTERNATIVE<br>OUTPUT<br>FUNCTIONS | I/O<br>CONFIGURATION<br>PROGRAMMING<br>BITS                           |
|--|-----------------|----------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|---|--|------------------------------------|---|
| C11,<br>A11,<br>B10,<br>A10, B9,<br>A9, B8,<br>A8 (127,<br>128, 130,<br>131, 134,<br>135, 138,<br>139) | XPD7 to<br>XPD0 | D1 data input                    | Y data input  |                                   | D1<br>decoder<br>output                                   |  |                                    | XCODE[92H[3]]<br>XPE[1:0] 83H[1:0]<br>+ pin XTRI                      |
| A7 (143)   | XCLK            | clock<br>input                   |   | gated clock<br>input              | decoder<br>clock<br>output                                |  |                                    | XPE[1:0] 83H[1:0]<br>+ pin XTRI<br>XPCK[1:0] 83H[5:4]<br>XCKS[92H[0]] |
| B7 (144)   | XDQ             | data<br>qualifier<br>input       |   |                                   | data<br>qualifier<br>output<br>(HREF and<br>VREF<br>gate) |  |                                    | XDQ[92H[1]]<br>XPE[1:0] 83H[1:0]<br>+ pin XTRI                        |
| A6 (146)   | XRDY            | input<br>ready<br>output         |   | active task A/B flag              |   |  |                                    | XRQT[83H[2]]<br>XPE[1:0] 83H[1:0]<br>+ pin XTRI                       |
| C7 (141)   | XRH             | horizontal<br>reference<br>input |   |                                   | decoder<br>horizontal<br>reference<br>output              |  |                                    | XDH[92H[2]]<br>XPE[1:0] 83H[1:0]<br>+ pin XTRI                        |
| D8 (140)   | XRV             | vertical<br>reference<br>input   |   |                                   | decoder<br>vertical<br>reference<br>output                |  |                                    | XDV[1:0] 92H[5:4]<br>XPE[1:0] 83H[1:0]<br>+ pin XTRI                  |
| B11<br>(126)   | XTRI            | output<br>enable<br>input        |   |                                   |   |  |                                    | XPE[1:0] 83H[1:0]   |

16

| <b>PIN</b> <sup>(1)</sup>   | SYMBOL          | 8-BIT<br>INPUT<br>MODES | 16-BIT INPUT<br>MODES (ONLY<br>FOR I <sup>2</sup> C-BUS<br>PROGRAMMING) | ALTERNATIVE<br>INPUT<br>FUNCTIONS | 8-BIT<br>OUTPUT<br>MODES    | 16-BIT OUTPUT<br>MODES (ONLY<br>FOR I <sup>2</sup> C-BUS<br>PROGRAMMING) | ALTERNATIVE<br>OUTPUT<br>FUNCTIONS          | I/O<br>CONFIGURATION<br>PROGRAMMING<br>BITS                                 |
|---|-----------------|-------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|---|---|
| G13,<br>F14,<br>F13,<br>E14,<br>E12,<br>E13,<br>E11, D14<br>(103,<br>105, 107,<br>109 to<br>113)    | HPD7 to<br>HPD0 |                         | C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> data input                               |                                   |                             | C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> scaler output                             |   | ICODE[93H[7]] ISWP[1:0] 85H[7:6] I8_16[93H[6]] IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0] + pin ITRI |
| K11,<br>J13, J14,<br>H13,<br>H14,<br>H11,<br>G12,<br>G14 (92<br>to 94, 97<br>to 99,<br>100,<br>102) | IPD7 to IPD0    |                         |   |                                   | D1 scaler<br>output         | Y scaler output  |   | ICODE[93H[7]] ISWP[1:0] 85H[7:6] I8_16[93H[6]] IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0] + pin ITRI |
| M14 (84)  | ICLK            |                         |   |                                   | clock<br>output             |  | clock input                                 | ICKS[1:0] 80H[1:0]<br>IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0]<br>+ pin ITRI                       |
| L13 (85)  | IDQ             |                         |   |                                   | data<br>qualifier<br>output |  | gated clock<br>output                       | ICKS[3:2] 80H[3:2]<br>IDQP[85H[0]]<br>IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0]<br>+ pin ITRI       |
| N12 (77)  | ITRDY           |                         |   |                                   | target ready input          |  |   |   |
| K12 (91)  | IGPH            |                         |   |                                   | H-gate<br>output            |  | extended<br>H-gate,<br>horizontal<br>pulses | IDH[1:0] 84H[1:0]<br>IRHP[85H[1]]<br>IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0]<br>+ pin ITRI        |

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

Philips Semiconductors

**SAA7118** 

**PIN**<sup>(1)</sup>

K14 (90)

K13 (89)

L14 (87)

L12 (86)

**SYMBOL** 

IGPV

IGP1

IGP0

ITRI

I/O

CONFIGURATION

**PROGRAMMING** 

**BITS** 

IDV[1:0] 84H[3:2]

IDG1[1:0] 84H[5:4]

IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0] + pin ITRI

IDG0[1:0] 84H[7:6]

IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0] + pin ITRI

IRVP[85H[2]] IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0] + pin ITRI

IG1P[85H[3]]

IG0P[85H[4]]

### Note

1. Pin numbers for QFP160 in parenthesis.

**16-BIT INPUT** 

**MODES (ONLY** 

FOR I<sup>2</sup>C-BUS

PROGRAMMING)

**ALTERNATIVE** 

**INPUT** 

**FUNCTIONS** 

8-BIT

OUTPUT

**MODES** 

V-gate

output

general

purpose

general

purpose

output enable

input

8-BIT

INPUT

**MODES** 

**16-BIT OUTPUT** 

**MODES (ONLY** 

FOR I<sup>2</sup>C-BUS

PROGRAMMING)

**ALTERNATIVE** 

OUTPUT

**FUNCTIONS** 

V-sync, vertical

pulses

Preliminary specification

**SAA7118** 

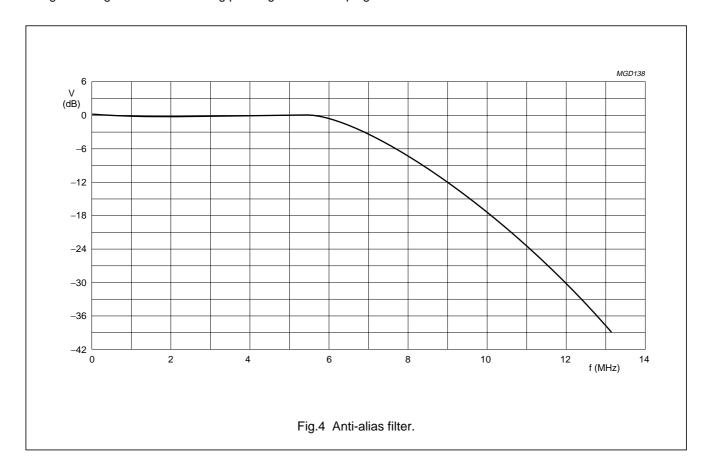
### **8 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION**

### 8.1 Decoder

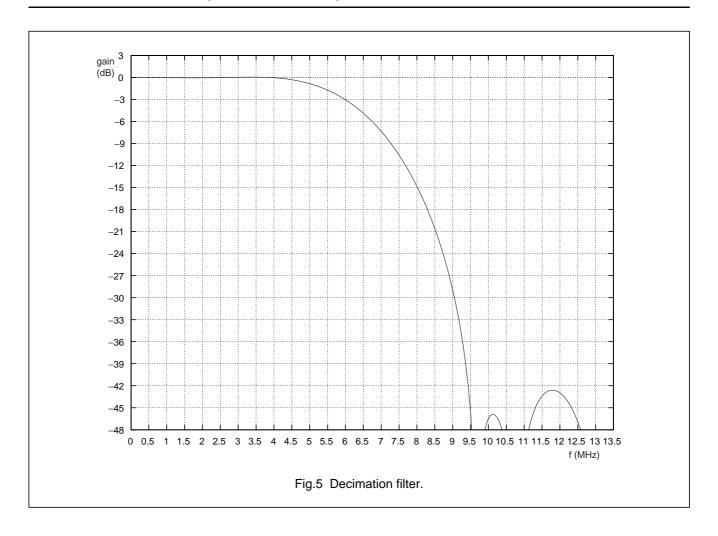
### 8.1.1 ANALOG INPUT PROCESSING

The SAA7118 offers sixteen analog signal inputs, four analog main channels with source switch, clamp circuit, analog amplifier, anti-alias filter and video 9-bit CMOS ADC with a Decimation Filter (DF); see Figs 5 and 8.

The anti-alias filters are adapted to the line-locked clock frequency via a filter control circuit. The characteristic is shown in Fig.4. During the vertical blanking period gain and clamping control are frozen.



**SAA7118** 



# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 8.1.1.1 Clamping

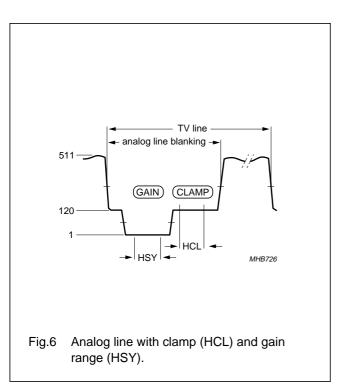
The clamp control circuit controls the correct clamping of the analog input signals. The coupling capacitor is also used to store and filter the clamping voltage. An internal digital clamp comparator generates the information with respect to clamp-up or clamp-down. The clamping levels for the four ADC channels are fixed for luminance (120), chrominance (256) and for component inputs as component Y (32), components  $P_B$  and  $P_R$  (256) or components RGB (32). Clamping time in normal use is set with the HCL pulse on the back porch of the video signal.

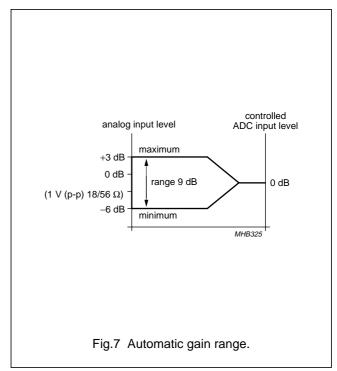
### 8.1.1.2 Gain control

The gain control circuit receives (via the I<sup>2</sup>C-bus) the static gain levels for the four analog amplifiers or controls one of these amplifiers automatically via a built-in Automatic Gain Control (AGC) as part of the Analog Input Control (AICO).

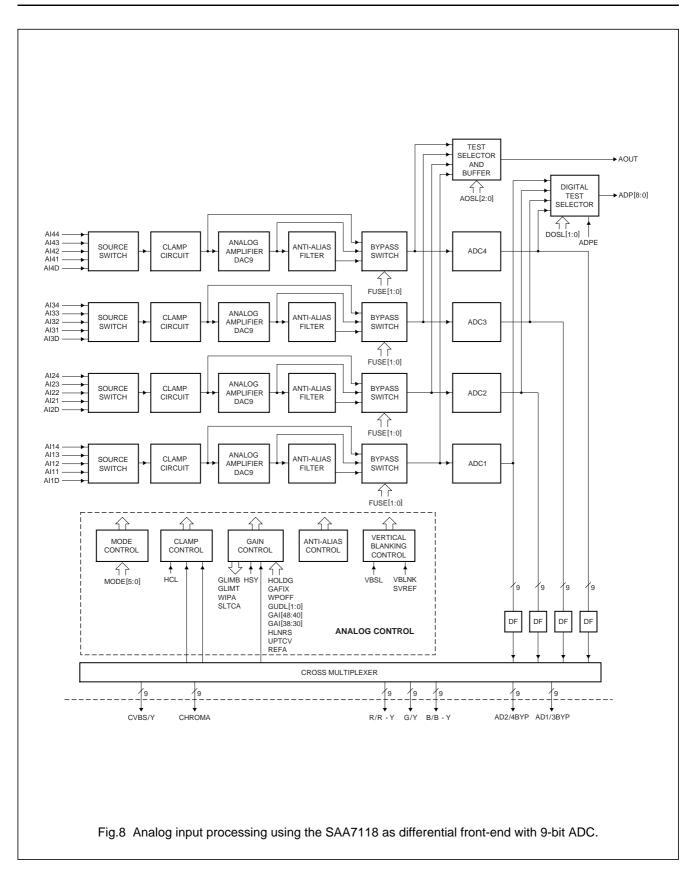
The AGC (automatic gain control for luminance) is used to amplify a CVBS or Y signal to the required signal amplitude, matched to the ADCs input voltage range. Component inputs are gain adjusted manually at a fixed gain. The AGC active time is the sync bottom of the video signal.

Signal (white) peak control limits the gain at signal overshoots. The flow charts (see Figs 9 and 10) show more details of the AGC. The influence of supply voltage variation within the specified range is automatically eliminated by clamp and automatic gain control.

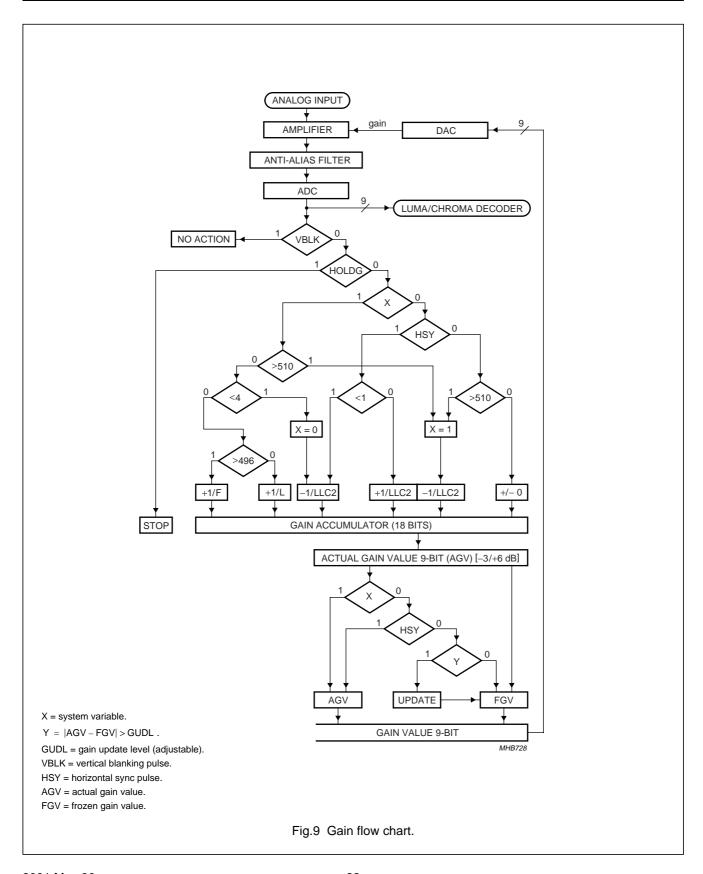




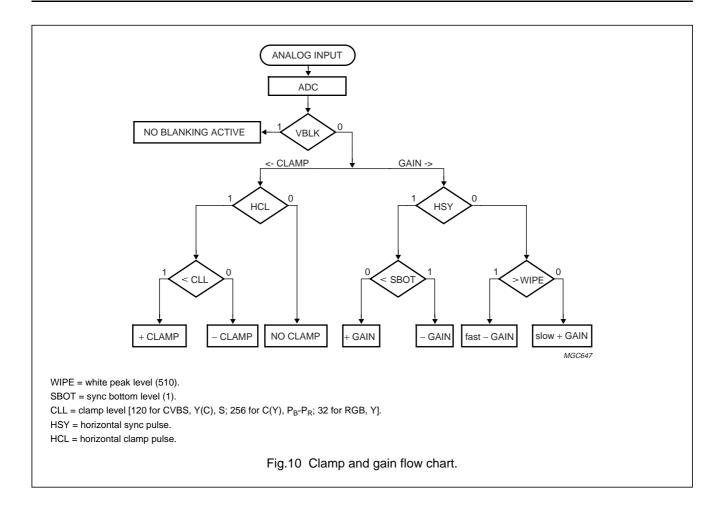
**SAA7118** 



**SAA7118** 

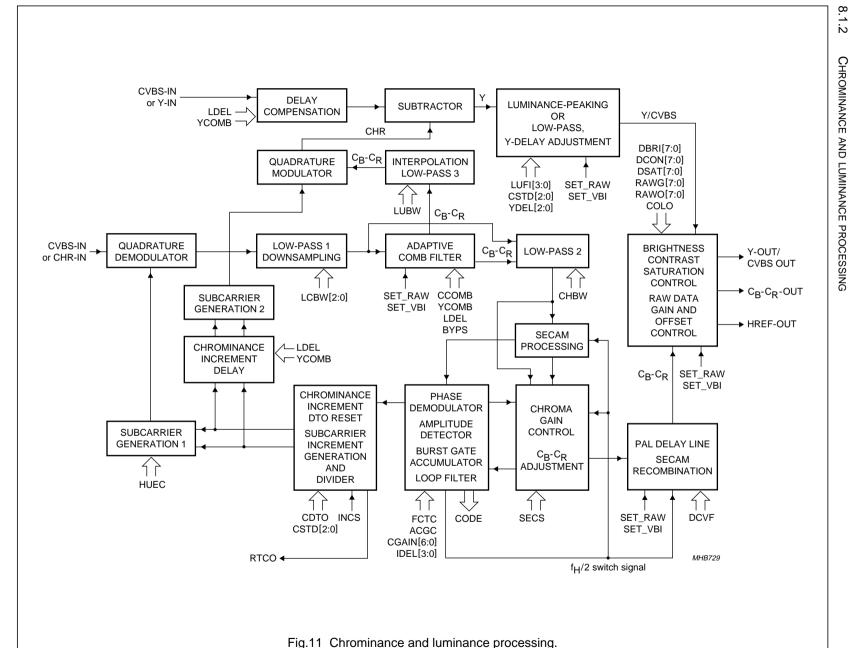


**SAA7118** 



Preliminary specification

8.1.2



**SAA7118** 

### 8.1.2.1 Chrominance path

The 9-bit CVBS or chrominance input signal is fed to the input of a quadrature demodulator, where it is multiplied by two time-multiplexed subcarrier signals from the subcarrier generation block 1 (0° and 90° phase relationship to the demodulator axis). The frequency is dependent on the chosen colour standard.

The time-multiplexed output signals of the multipliers are low-pass filtered (low-pass 1). Eight characteristics are programmable via LCWB3 to LCWB0 to achieve the desired bandwidth for the colour difference signals (PAL, NTSC) or the 0° and 90° FM signals (SECAM).

The chrominance low-pass 1 characteristic also influences the grade of cross-luminance reduction during horizontal colour transients (large chrominance bandwidth means strong suppression of cross-luminance). If the Y-comb filter is disabled by YCOMB = 0 the filter influences directly the width of the chrominance notch within the luminance path (a large chrominance bandwidth means wide chrominance notch resulting in a lower luminance bandwidth).

The low-pass filtered signals are fed to the adaptive comb filter block. The chrominance components are separated from the luminance via a two line vertical stage (four lines for PAL standards) and a decision logic between the filtered and the non-filtered output signals. This block is bypassed for SECAM signals. The comb filter logic can be enabled independently for the succeeding luminance and chrominance processing by YCOMB (subaddress 09H, bit 6) and/or CCOMB (subaddress 0EH, bit 0). It is always bypassed during VBI or raw data lines programmable by the LCRn registers (subaddresses 41H to 57H); see Section 8.3.

The separated  $C_B$ - $C_R$  components are further processed by a second filter stage (low-pass 2) to modify the chrominance bandwidth without influencing the luminance path. It's characteristic is controlled by CHBW (subaddress 10H, bit 3). For the complete transfer characteristic of low-passes 1 and 2 see Figs 12 and 13.

The SECAM processing (bypassed for QAM standards) contains the following blocks:

- Baseband 'bell' filters to reconstruct the amplitude and phase equalized 0° and 90° FM signals
- Phase demodulator and differentiator (FM-demodulation)
- De-emphasis filter to compensate the pre-emphasized input signal, including frequency offset compensation (DB or DR white carrier values are subtracted from the signal, controlled by the SECAM switch signal).

The succeeding chrominance gain control block amplifies or attenuates the  $C_B$ - $C_R$  signal according to the required ITU 601/656 levels. It is controlled by the output signal from the amplitude detection circuit within the burst processing block.

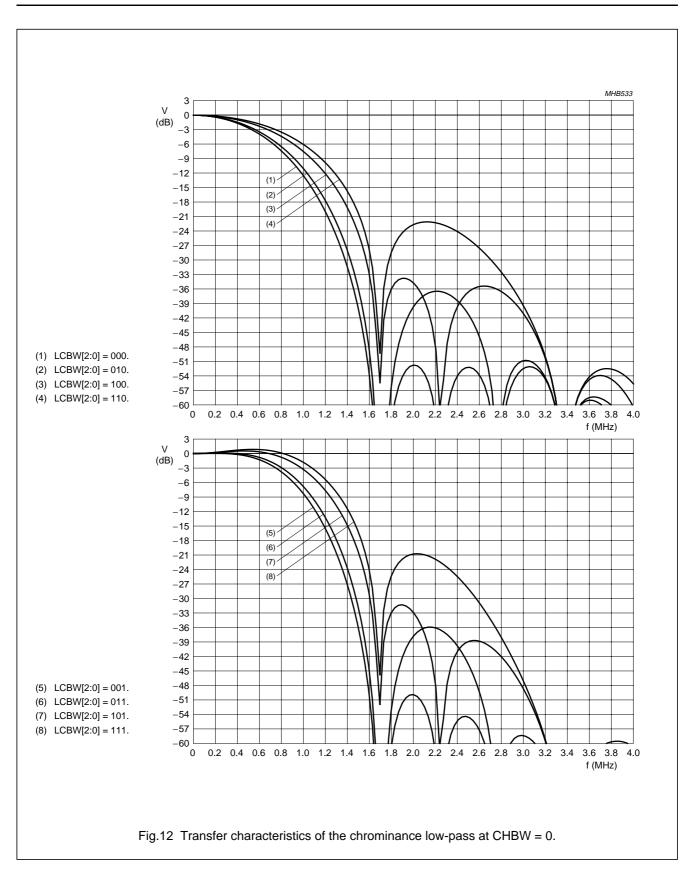
The burst processing block provides the feedback loop of the chrominance PLL and contains the following:

- · Burst gate accumulator
- · Colour identification and colour killer
- Comparison nominal/actual burst amplitude (PAL/NTSC standards only)
- Loop filter chrominance gain control (PAL/NTSC standards only)
- Loop filter chrominance PLL (only active for PAL/NTSC standards)
- PAL/SECAM sequence detection, H/2-switch generation.

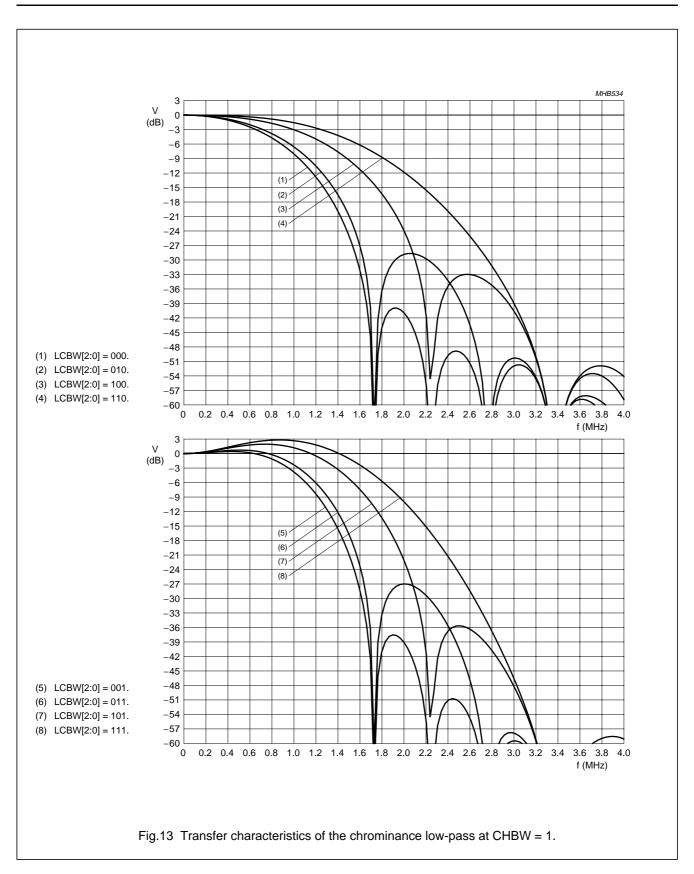
The increment generation circuit produces the Discrete Time Oscillator (DTO) increment for both subcarrier generation blocks. It contains a division by the increment of the line-locked clock generator to create a stable phase-locked sine signal under all conditions (e.g. for non-standard signals).

The PAL delay line block eliminates crosstalk between the chrominance channels in accordance with the PAL standard requirements. For NTSC colour standards the delay line can be used as an additional vertical filter. If desired, it can be switched off by DCVF = 1. It is always disabled during VBI or raw data lines programmable by the LCRn registers (subaddresses 41H to 57H); see Section 8.3. The embedded line delay is also used for SECAM recombination (cross-over switches).

**SAA7118** 



**SAA7118** 



**SAA7118** 

### 8.1.2.2 Luminance path

The rejection of the chrominance components within the 9-bit CVBS or Y input signal is achieved by subtracting the remodulated chrominance signal from the CVBS input.

The comb filtered  $C_B$ - $C_R$  components are interpolated (upsampled) by the low-pass 3 block. It's characteristic is controlled by LUBW (subaddress 09H, bit 4) to modify the width of the chrominance 'notch' without influencing the chrominance path. The programmable frequency characteristics available, in conjunction with the LCBW2 to LCBW0 settings, can be seen in Figs 14 to 17. It should be noted that these frequency curves are only valid for Y-comb disabled filter mode (YCOMB = 0). In comb filter mode the frequency response is flat. The centre frequency of the notch is automatically adapted to the chosen colour standard.

The interpolated  $C_B$ - $C_R$  samples are multiplied by two time-multiplexed subcarrier signals from the subcarrier generation block 2. This second DTO is locked to the first subcarrier generator by an increment delay circuit matched to the processing delay, which is different for PAL and NTSC standards according to the chosen comb filter algorithm. The two modulated signals are finally added to build the remodulated chrominance signal.

The frequency characteristic of the separated luminance signal can be further modified by the succeeding luminance filter block. It can be configured as peaking (resolution enhancement) or low-pass block by LUFI3 to LUFI0 (subaddress 09H, bits 3 to 0). The 16 resulting frequency characteristics can be seen in Fig.18. The LUFI3 to LUFI0 settings can be used as a user programmable sharpness control.

The luminance filter block also contains the adjustable Y-delay part; programmable by YDEL2 to YDEL0 (subaddress 11H, bits 2 to 0).

**SAA7118** 

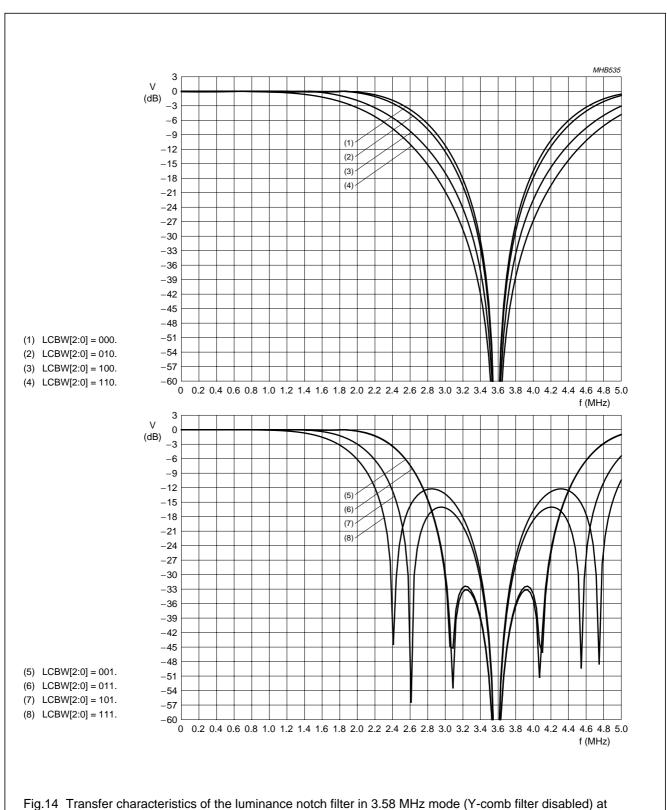
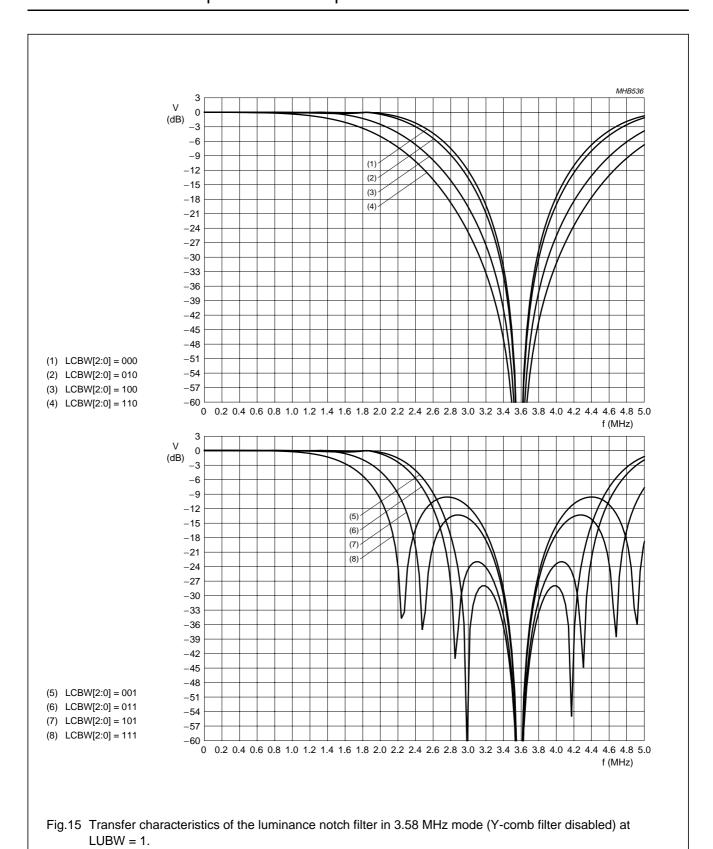


Fig.14 Transfer characteristics of the luminance notch filter in 3.58 MHz mode (Y-comb filter disabled) at LUBW = 0.

**SAA7118** 



**SAA7118** 

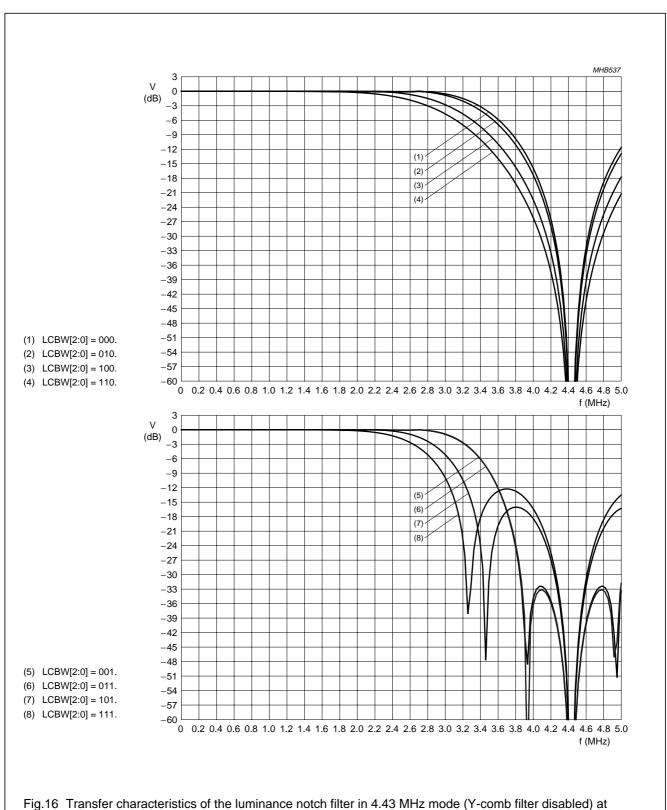
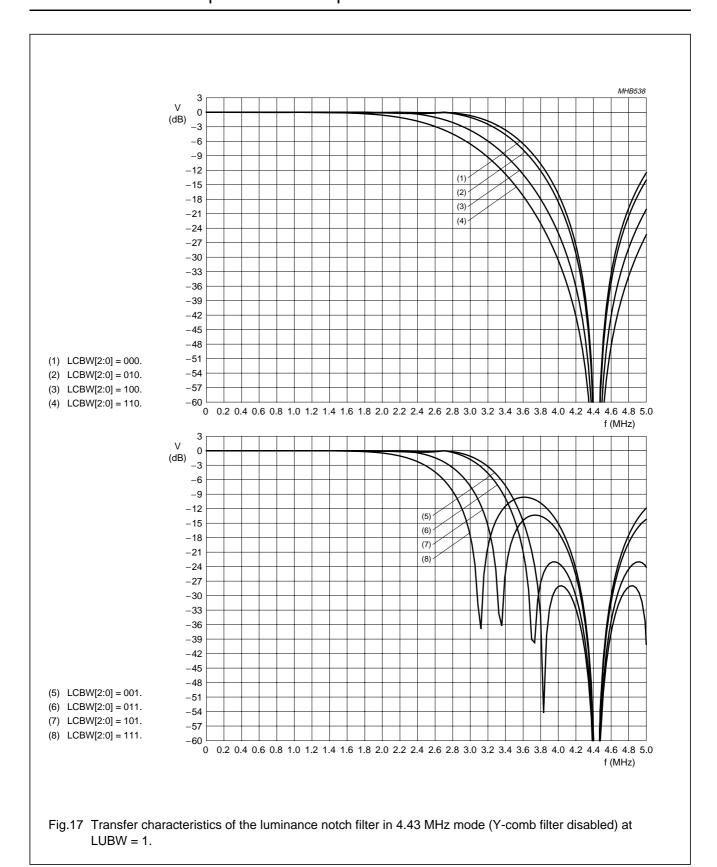
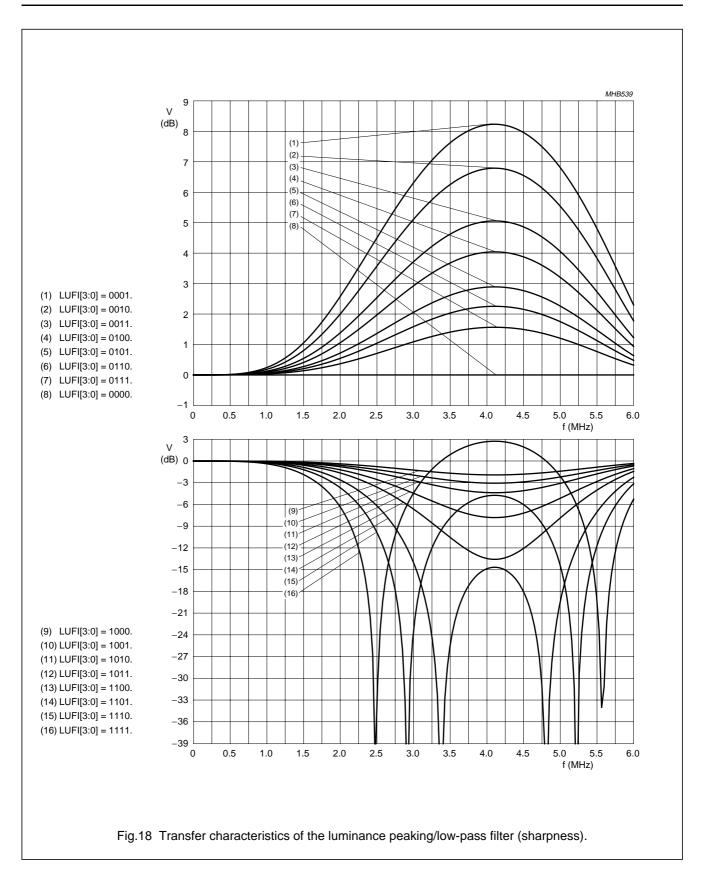


Fig.16 Transfer characteristics of the luminance notch filter in 4.43 MHz mode (Y-comb filter disabled) at LUBW = 0.

**SAA7118** 



**SAA7118** 



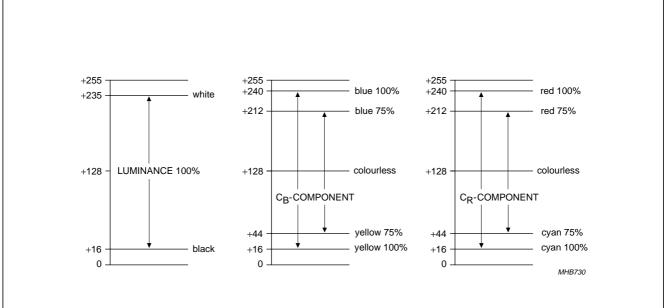
# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 8.1.2.3 Brightness Contrast Saturation (BCS) control and decoder output levels

The resulting Y (CVBS) and C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> signals are fed to the BCS block, which contains the following functions:

- Chrominance saturation control by DSAT7 to DSAT0
- Luminance contrast and brightness control by DCON7 to DCON0 and DBRI7 to DBRI0
- Raw data (CVBS) gain and offset adjustment by RAWG7 to RAWG0 and RAWO7 to RAWO0
- Limiting Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> or CVBS to the values 1 (minimum) and 254 (maximum) to fulfil "ITU Recommendation 601/656".



a. Y output range.

b. C<sub>B</sub> output range.

c. C<sub>R</sub> output range.

"ITU Recommendation 601/656" digital levels with default BCS (decoder) settings DCON[7:0] = 44H, DBRI[7:0] = 80H and DSAT[7:0] = 40H. Equations for modification to the Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> levels via BCS control I<sup>2</sup>C-bus bytes DBRI, DCON and DSAT.

$$Luminance: Y_{OUT} = Int \left[ \frac{DCON}{68} \times (Y - 128) \right] + DBRI$$

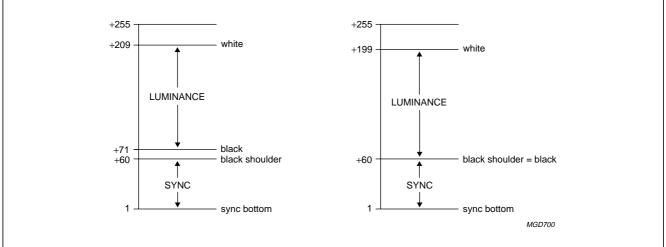
$$Chrominance: \left(C_R C_B\right)_{OUT} \ = \ Int \bigg[ \frac{DSAT}{64} \times \left(C_R, C_B - 128\right) \bigg] + 128$$

It should be noted that the resulting levels are limited to 1 to 254 in accordance with "ITU Recommendation 601/656".

Fig.19 Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> range for scaler input and X-port output.

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 



- a. Sources containing 7.5 IRE black level offset (e.g. NTSC M).
- b. Sources not containing black level offset.

CVBS levels with default settings RAWG[7:0] = 64 and RAWO[7:0] = 128. Equation for modification of the raw data levels via bytes RAWG and RAWO:

$$\text{CVBS}_{\text{OUT}} \, = \, \text{Int} \bigg[ \frac{\text{RAWG}}{64} \times (\text{CVBS}_{\text{nom}} - 128) \bigg] + \text{RAWO}$$

It should be noted that the resulting levels are limited to 1 to 254 in accordance with "ITU Recommendation 601/656".

Fig.20 CVBS (raw data) range for scaler input, data slicer and X-port output.

### 8.1.3 SYNCHRONIZATION

The prefiltered luminance signal is fed to the synchronization stage. Its bandwidth is further reduced to 1 MHz in a low-pass filter. The sync pulses are sliced and fed to the phase detectors where they are compared with the sub-divided clock frequency. The resulting output signal is applied to the loop filter to accumulate all phase deviations. Internal signals (e.g. HCL and HSY) are generated in accordance with analog front-end requirements. The loop filter signal drives an oscillator to generate the line frequency control signal LFCO; see Fig.21.

The detection of 'pseudo syncs' as part of the macrovision copy protection standard is also achieved within the synchronization circuit.

The result is reported as flag COPRO within the decoder status byte at subaddress 1FH.

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 8.1.4 CLOCK GENERATION CIRCUIT

The internal CGC generates all clock signals required for the video input processor.

The internal signal LFCO is a digital-to-analog converted signal provided by the horizontal PLL. It is the multiple of the line frequency:

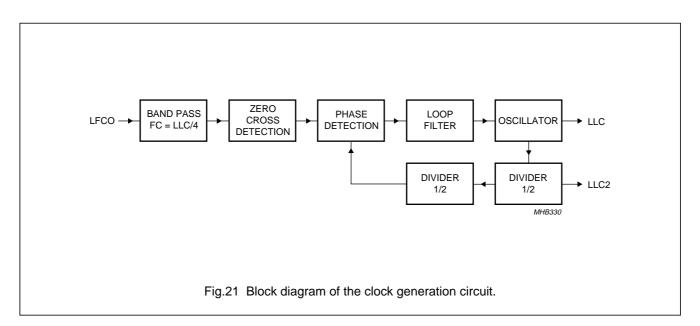
$$6.75 \text{ MHz} = 429 \times f_H (50 \text{ Hz}), \text{ or}$$

 $6.75 \text{ MHz} = 432 \times f_H \text{ (60 Hz)}.$ 

The LFCO signal is multiplied by a factor of 2 and 4 in the internal PLL circuit (including phase detector, loop filtering, VCO and frequency divider) to obtain the output clock signals. The rectangular output clocks have a 50% duty factor.

Table 3 Decoder clock frequencies

| CLOCK           | FREQUENCY (MHz)  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| XTALO           | 24.576 or 32.110 |
| LLC             | 27               |
| LLC2            | 13.5             |
| LLC4 (internal) | 6.75             |
| LLC8 (virtual)  | 3.375            |

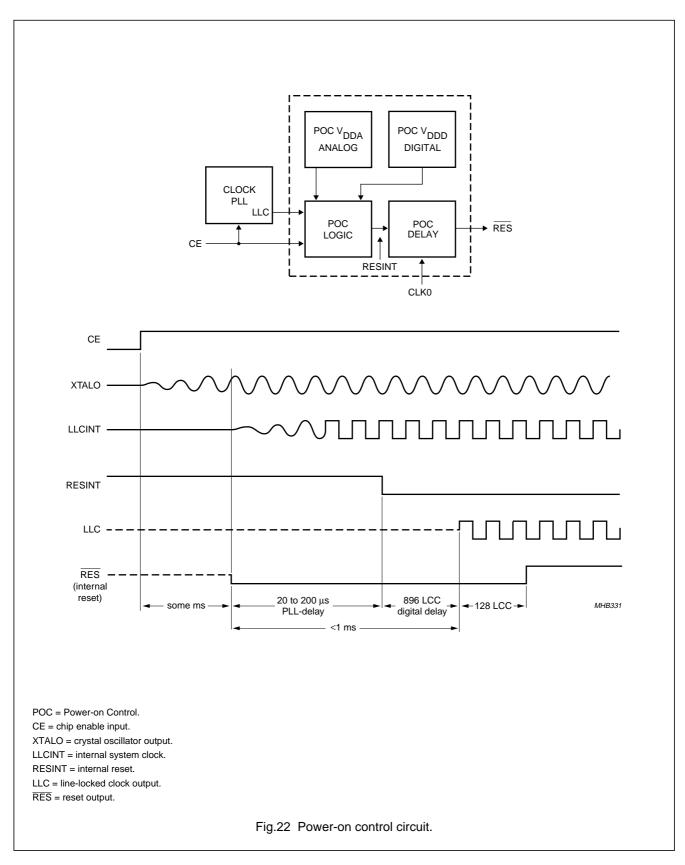


### 8.1.5 POWER-ON RESET AND CHIP ENABLE (CE) INPUT

A missing clock, insufficient digital or analog  $V_{DDA0}$  supply voltages (below 2.8 V) will start the reset sequence; all outputs are forced to 3-state (see Fig.22). The indicator output  $\overline{RES}$  is LOW for approximately 128 LLC after the internal reset and can be applied to reset other circuits of the digital TV system.

It is possible to force a reset by pulling the Chip Enable pin (CE) to ground. After the rising edge of CE and sufficient power supply voltage, the outputs LLC, LLC2 and SDA return from 3-state to active, while the other signals have to be activated via programming.

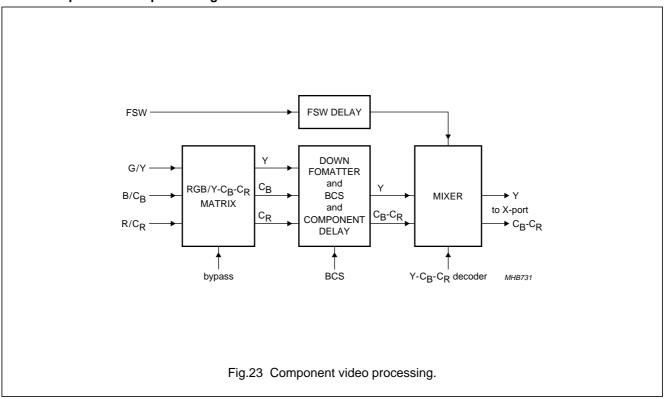
**SAA7118** 



### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 8.2 Component video processing



### 8.2.1 RGB-TO- $(Y-C_B-C_R)$ MATRIX

The matrix converts the RGB signals from the analog-to-digital converters/downsamplers to the  $Y-C_B-C_R$  representation. The input and output word widths are 9 bits. The matrix has a gain factor of 1. The block provides a delay compensated bypass for component input signals.

The matrix is represented by the following equations:

$$Y = 0.299 \times R + 0.587 \times G = 0.114 \times B$$

$$C_B = 0.5772 \times (B - Y)$$

$$C_R = 0.7296 \times (R - Y)$$

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

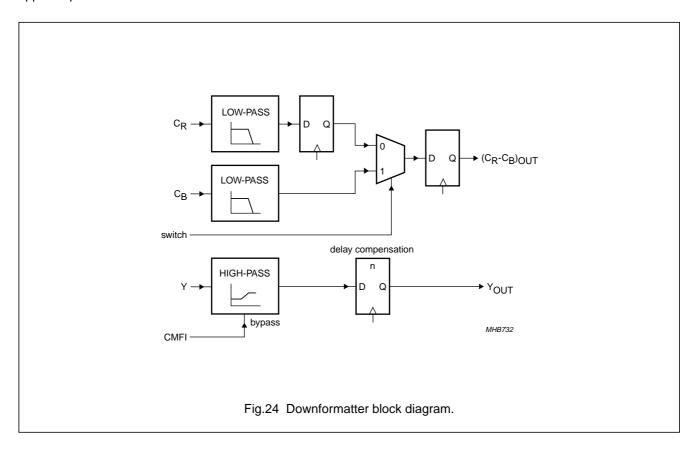
#### 8.2.2 DOWNFORMATTER

The block mainly consists of 2 parts: the colour difference signal downsampler and the Y-path.

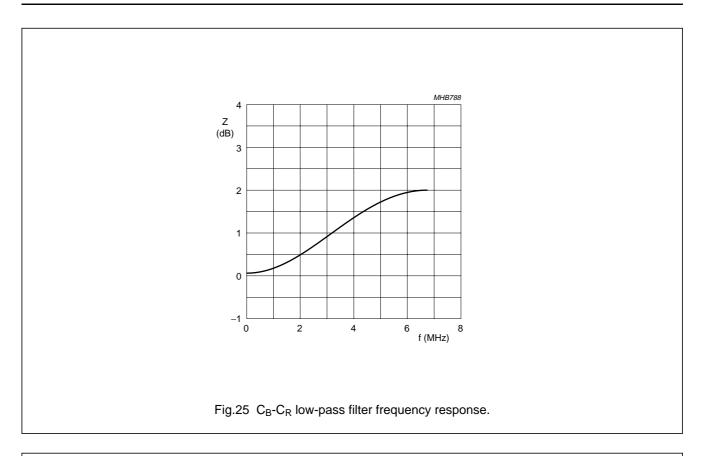
The colour difference signals are first passed through low-pass filters which reduce alias effects due to the lower data rate. The ITU sampling scheme requires that both colour difference samples fit to the first Y sample of the current time slot. Thus the  $C_R$  signal is delayed by 1 clock before it is fed to the multiplexer. The switch signal defines the data multiplex phase at the output: a '0' marks the first clock of a time slot, this is a  $C_B$  sample. The output is fed through a register, so that the multiplexer runs with the opposite phase.

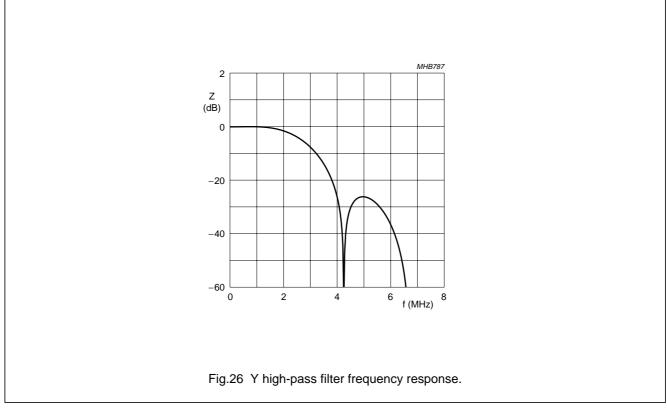
The delay compensation for the Y signal already provides most of the registers required for a small high-pass filter. It can be used to compensate high frequency losses in the analog part. It provides 2 dB gain at 6.75 MHz.

The Y high-pass filter frequency response is shown in Fig.26. The DC gain of the filter is 1, so a limiter is required at the filter output. The current implementation clips at the maximum values of 0 and 511. The entire filter can be controlled by the I<sup>2</sup>C-bus bit CMFI in subaddress 29H.



**SAA7118** 





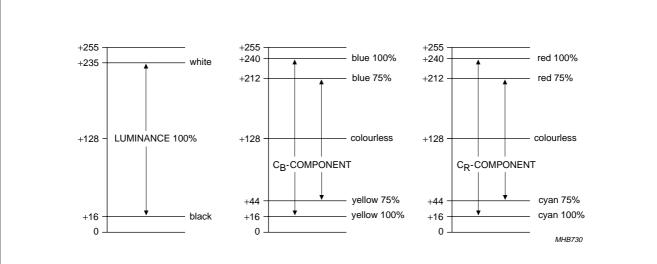
### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 8.2.3 COMPONENT VIDEO BCS CONTROL

The resulting Y and C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> signals are fed to the Component BCS (CBCS) block, which contains the following functions:

- Chrominance saturation control by CSAT7 to CSAT0
- Luminance contrast and brightness control by CCON7 to CCON0 and CBRI7 to CBRI0
- Limiting Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> or CVBS to the values 1 (minimum) and 254 (maximum) to fulfil "ITU Recommendation 601/656".



a. Y output range.

b. C<sub>B</sub> output range.

c. C<sub>R</sub> output range.

"ITU Recommendation 601/656" digital levels with default CBCS (decoder) settings CCON[7:0] = 44H, CBRI[7:0] = 80H and CSAT[7:0] = 40H. Equations for modification to the Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> levels via CBCS control I<sup>2</sup>C-bus bytes CBRI, CCON and CSAT.

$$Luminance: \qquad Y_{OUT} \ = \ Int \bigg[ \frac{CCON}{68} \times (Y-128) \bigg] + CBRI$$

$$\label{eq:Chrominance: CBCR} \text{Chrominance: } \left( C_B C_R \right)_{OUT} \ = \ \text{Int} \Big[ \frac{\text{CSAT}}{64} \times \left( C_B, C_R - 128 \right) \Big] + 128$$

It should be noted that the resulting levels are limited to 1 to 254 in accordance with "ITU Recommendation 601/656".

Fig.27 Components Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> range.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 8.3 Decoder output formatter

The output interface block of the decoder part contains the ITU 656 formatter for the expansion port data output XPD7 to XPD0 (for a detailed description see Section 9.5.1) and the control circuit for the signals needed for the internal paths to the scaler and data slicer part. It also controls the selection of the reference signals for the RT port (RTCO, RTS0 and RTS1) and the expansion port (XRH, XRV and XDQ).

The generation of the decoder data type control signals SET\_RAW and SET VBI is also done within this block. These signals are decoded from the requested data type for the scaler input and/or the data slicer, selectable by the control registers LCR2 to LCR24 (see also Chapter 15; subaddresses 41H to 57H).

For each LCR value from 2 to 23 the data type can be programmed individually. LCR2 to LCR23 refer to line numbers. The selection in LCR24 values is valid for the rest of the corresponding field. The upper nibble contains the value for field 1 (odd), the lower nibble for field 2 (even). The relationship between LCR values and line numbers can be adjusted via VOFF8 to VOFF0, located in subaddresses 5BH (bit 4) and 5AH (bits 7 to 0) and FOFF subaddress 5BH (bit D7). The recommended values are VOFF[8:0] = 03H for 50 Hz sources (with FOFF = 0) and VOFF[8:0] = 06H for 60 Hz sources (with FOFF = 1), to accommodate line number conventions as used for PAL, SECAM and NTSC standards; see Tables 5 to 8.

Table 4 Data formats at decoder output

| DATA TYPE NUMBER | DATA TYPE                                   | DECODER OUTPUT DATA FORMAT                 |
|------------------|---|--|
| 0                | teletext EuroWST, CCST                      | raw  |
| 1                | European closed caption                     | raw  |
| 2                | Video Programming Service (VPS)             | raw  |
| 3                | wide screen signalling bits                 | raw  |
| 4                | US teletext (WST)                           | raw  |
| 5                | US closed caption (line 21)                 | raw  |
| 6                | video component signal, VBI region          | Y-C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> 4 : 2 : 2 |
| 7                | CVBS data                                   | raw  |
| 8                | teletext                                    | raw  |
| 9                | VITC/EBU time codes (Europe)                | raw  |
| 10               | VITC/SMPTE time codes (USA)                 | raw  |
| 11               | reserved                                    | raw  |
| 12               | US NABTS                                    | raw  |
| 13               | MOJI (Japanese)                             | raw  |
| 14               | Japanese format switch (L20/22)             | raw  |
| 15               | video component signal, active video region | Y-C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> 4 : 2 : 2 |

comb filter and component video input

**Table 5** Relationship of LCR to line numbers in 525 lines/60 Hz systems (part 1)

Vertical line offset, VOFF[8:0] = 06H (subaddresses 5BH[4] and 5AH[7:0]); horizontal pixel offset, HOFF[10:0] = 347H (subaddresses 5BH[2:0] and 59H[7:0]); FOFF = 1 (subaddress 5BH[7])

| Line number | 521 | 522    | 523        | 524 | 525 | 1                   | 2         | 3   | 4        | 5          | 6   | 7                   | 8         | 9   |  |
|-------------|-----|--------|------------|-----|-----|---------------------|-----------|-----|----------|------------|-----|---------------------|-----------|-----|--|
| (1st field) |     | а      | ctive vide | 0   |     | equalization pulses |           |     |          | ration pul | ses | equalization pulses |           |     |  |
| Line number | 259 | 260    | 261        | 262 | 263 | 264                 | 265       | 266 | 267      | 268        | 269 | 270                 | 271       | 272 |  |
| (2nd field) |     | active | video      |     |     | equalizati          | on pulses |     | serratio | n pulses   |     | equalizati          | on pulses |     |  |
| LCR         |     |        | 2          | 4   |     |                     | 2         | 3   | 4        | 5          | 6   | 7                   | 8         | 9   |  |

### **Table 6** Relationship of LCR to line numbers in 525 lines/60 Hz systems (part 2)

Vertical line offset, VOFF[8:0] = 06H (subaddresses 5BH[4] and 5AH[7:0]); horizontal pixel offset, HOFF[10:0] = 347H (subaddresses 5BH[2:0] and 59H[7:0]); FOFF = 1 (subaddress 5BH[7])

| Line number | 10  | 11                   | 12  | 13  | 14  | 15  | 16  | 17  | 18  | 19  | 20  | 21  | 22           | 23           | 24  | 25  |  |  |
|-------------|-----|----------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------------|--------------|-----|-----|--|--|
| (1st field) |     | nominal VBI-lines F1 |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |              | active video |     |     |  |  |
| Line number | 273 | 274                  | 275 | 276 | 277 | 278 | 279 | 280 | 281 | 282 | 283 | 284 | 285          | 286          | 287 | 288 |  |  |
| (2nd field) |     | nominal VBI-lines F2 |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | active video |              |     |     |  |  |
| LCR         | 10  | 11                   | 12  | 13  | 14  | 15  | 16  | 17  | 18  | 19  | 20  | 21  | 22           | 23           | 2   | 4   |  |  |

### **Table 7** Relationship of LCR to line numbers in 625 lines/50 Hz systems (part 1)

Vertical line offset, VOFF[8:0] = 03H (subaddresses 5BH[4] and 5AH[7:0]); horizontal pixel offset, HOFF[10:0] = 347H (subaddresses 5BH[2:0] and 59H[7:0]); FOFF = 0 (subaddress 5BH[7])

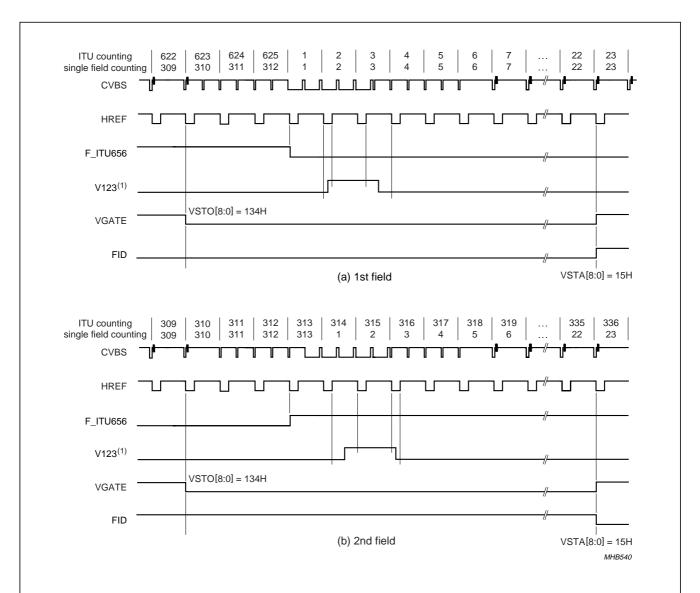
| Line number | 621    | 622        | 623    | 624                 | 62 | 5 | 1            | 2            | 3      | 4             | 5   |   |
|-------------|--------|------------|--------|---------------------|----|---|--------------|--------------|--------|---------------|-----|---|
| (1st field) | ac     | tive video |        | equalization puls   |    |   | serra        | ation pulses |        | equalization  |     |   |
| Line number | 309    | 310        | 311    | 11 312 313          |    | 3 | 314          | 315          | 316    | 317           | 318 | 8 |
| (2nd field) | active | video      | equali | equalization pulses |    |   | serration pu | ılses        | equali | zation pulses |     |   |
| LCR         |        |            | 2      | 4                   | •  |   |              | 2            | 3      | 4             | 5   |   |

### **Table 8** Relationship of LCR to line numbers in 625 lines/50 Hz systems (part 2)

Vertical line offset, VOFF[8:0] = 03H (subaddresses 5BH[4] and 5AH[7:0]); horizontal pixel offset, HOFF[10:0] = 347H (subaddresses 5BH[2:0] and 59H[7:0]); FOFF = 0 (subaddress 5BH[7])

| •           |     |                           |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |          |        |       |     |     |     |     |     |
|-------------|-----|---------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------|--------|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Line number | 6   | 7                         | 8   | 9   | 10  | 11  | 12  | 13  | 14  | 15  | 16  | 17  | 18       | 19     | 20    | 21  | 22  | 23  | 24  | 25  |
| (1st field) |     | nominal VBI-lines F1      |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |          | active | video |     |     |     |     |     |
| Line number | 319 | 320                       | 321 | 322 | 323 | 324 | 325 | 326 | 327 | 328 | 329 | 330 | 331      | 332    | 333   | 334 | 335 | 336 | 337 | 338 |
| (2nd field) |     | nominal VBI-lines F2 acti |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | tive vid | eo     |       |     |     |     |     |     |
| LCR         | 6   | 7                         | 8   | 9   | 10  | 11  | 12  | 13  | 14  | 15  | 16  | 17  | 18       | 19     | 20    | 21  | 22  | 23  | 2   | 4   |

**SAA7118** 



<sup>(1)</sup> The inactive going edge of the V123 signal indicates whether the field is odd or even. If HREF is active during the falling edge of V123, the field is ODD (field 1). If HREF is inactive during the falling edge of V123, the field is EVEN. The specific position of the slope is dependent on the internal processing delay and may change a few clock cycles from version to version.

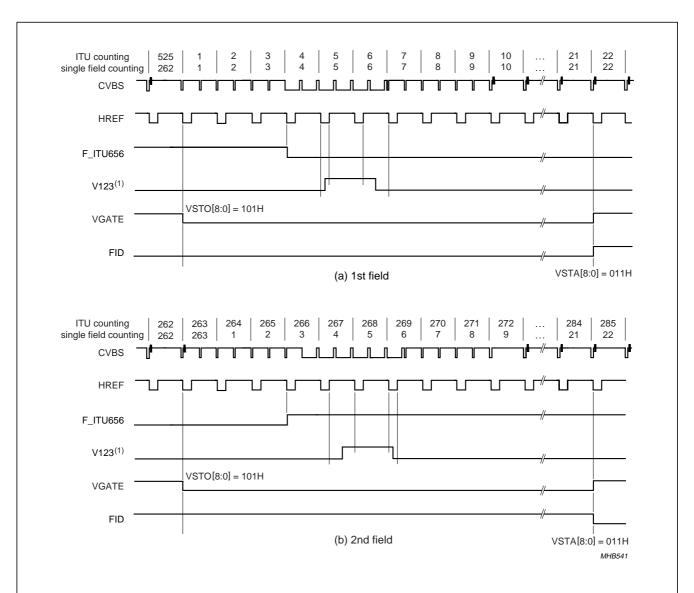
The control signals listed above are available on pins RTS0, RTS1, XRH and XRV according to the following table:

| NAME     | RTS0 | RTS1 | XRH | XRV |
|----------|------|------|-----|-----|
| HREF     | X    | Х    | Х   | _   |
| F_ITU656 | _    | _    | _   | X   |
| V123     | X    | X    | _   | Х   |
| VGATE    | X    | X    | _   | _   |
| FID      | Х    | Х    | _   | _   |

For further information see Section 15.2: Tables 56, 57 and 58.

Fig.28 Vertical timing diagram for 50 Hz/625 line systems.

**SAA7118** 



<sup>(1)</sup> The inactive going edge of the V123 signal indicates whether the field is odd or even. If HREF is active during the falling edge of V123, the field is ODD (field 1). If HREF is inactive during the falling edge of V123, the field is EVEN. The specific position of the slope is dependent on the internal processing delay and may change a few clock cycles from version to version.

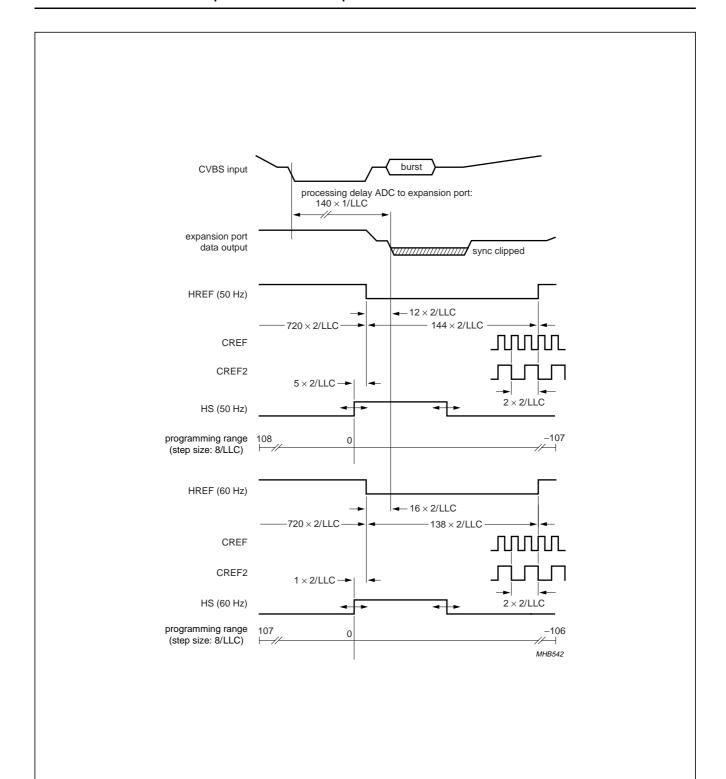
The control signals listed above are available on pins RTS0, RTS1, XRH and XRV according to the following table:

| NAME     | RTS0 | RTS1 | XRH | XRV |
|----------|------|------|-----|-----|
| HREF     | X    | Х    | Х   | _   |
| F_ITU656 | _    | _    | _   | X   |
| V123     | X    | X    | _   | Х   |
| VGATE    | X    | X    | _   | _   |
| FID      | Х    | Х    | _   | _   |

For further information see Section 15.2: Tables 56, 57 and 58.

Fig.29 Vertical timing diagram for 60 Hz/525 line systems.

**SAA7118** 



The signals HREF, HS, CREF2 and CREF are available on pins RTS0 and/or RTS1 (see Section 15.2.19 Tables 56 and 57); their polarity can be inverted via RTP0 and/or RTP1.

The signals HREF and HS are available on pin XRH (see Section 15.2.20 Table 58).

Fig.30 Horizontal timing diagram (50/60 Hz).

**SAA7118** 

#### 8.4 Scaler

The High Performance video Scaler (HPS) is based on the system as implemented in the SAA7140, but with some aspects enhanced. Vertical upsampling is supported and the processing pipeline buffer capacity is enhanced, to allow more flexible video stream timing at the image port, discontinuous transfers, and handshake. The internal data flow from block to block is discontinuous dynamically, due to the scaling process itself.

The flow is controlled by internal data valid and data request flags (internal handshake signalling) between the sub-blocks; therefore the entire scaler acts as a pipeline buffer. Depending on the actually programmed scaling parameters the effective buffer can exceed to an entire line. The access/bandwidth requirements to the VGA frame buffer are reduced significantly.

The high performance video scaler in the SAA7118 has the following major blocks:

- Acquisition control (horizontal and vertical timer) and task handling (the region/field/frame based processing)
- Prescaler, for horizontal down-scaling by an integer factor, combined with appropriate band limiting filters, especially anti-aliasing for CIF format
- Brightness, saturation, contrast control for scaled output data
- Line buffer, with asynchronous read and write, to support vertical up-scaling (e.g. for videophone application, converting 240 into 288 lines, Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> 4:2:2)
- Vertical scaling, with phase accurate Linear Phase Interpolation (LPI) for zoom and downscale, or phase accurate Accumulation Mode (ACM) for large downscaling ratios and better alias suppression
- Variable Phase Delay (VPD), operates as horizontal phase accurate interpolation for arbitrary non-integer scaling ratios, supporting conversion between square and rectangular pixel sampling
- Output formatter for scaled Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> 4 : 2 : 2,
   Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> 4 : 1 : 1 and Y only (format also for raw data)
- FIFO, 32-bit wide, with 64 pixel capacity in Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> formats
- Output interface, 8 or 16-bit (only if extended by H-port) data pins wide, synchronous or asynchronous operation, with stream events on discrete pins, or coded in the data stream.

The overall H and V zooming (HV\_zoom) is restricted by the input/output data rate relationships. With a safety margin of 2% for running in and running out, the maximum HV\_zoom is equal to:

$$0.98 \times \frac{\text{T\_input\_field} - \text{T\_v\_blanking}}{\text{in\_pixel} \times \text{in\_lines} \times \text{out\_cycle\_per\_pix} \times \text{T\_out\_clk}}$$

For example:

 Input from decoder: 50 Hz, 720 pixel, 288 lines, 16-bit data at 13.5 MHz data rate, 1 cycle per pixel; output: 8-bit data at 27 MHz, 2 cycles per pixel; the maximum HV\_zoom is equal to:

$$0.98 \times \frac{20 \text{ ms} - 24 \times 64 \text{ } \mu\text{s}}{720 \times 288 \times 2 \times 37 \text{ ns}} = 1.18$$

Input from X-port: 60 Hz, 720 pixel, 240 lines, 8-bit data at 27 MHz data rate (ITU 656), 2 cycles per pixel; output via I + H-port: 16-bit data at 27 MHz clock, 1 cycle per pixel; the maximum HV\_zoom is equal to:

$$0.98 \times \frac{16.666 \text{ ms} - 22 \times 64 \text{ } \mu\text{s}}{720 \times 240 \times 1 \times 37 \text{ ns}} = 2.34$$

The video scaler receives its input signal from the video decoder or from the expansion port (X-port). It gets 16-bit Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> 4:2:2 input data at a continuous rate of 13.5 MHz from the decoder. Discontinuous data stream can be accepted from the expansion port (X-port), normally 8-bit wide ITU 656 like Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> data, accompanied by a pixel qualifier on XDQ.

The input data stream is sorted into two data paths, one for luminance (or raw samples) and one for time multiplexed chrominance  $C_B$  and  $C_R$  samples. An Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> 4:1:1 input format is converted to 4:2:2 for the horizontal prescaling and vertical filter scaling operation.

The scaler operation is defined by two programming pages A and B, representing two different tasks, that can be applied field alternating or to define two regions in a field (e.g. with different scaling range, factors and signal source during odd and even fields).

Each programming page contains control:

- · For signal source selection and formats
- For task handling and trigger conditions
- For input and output acquisition window definition
- For H-prescaler, V-scaler and H-phase scaling.

Raw VBI-data is handled as specific input format and needs its own programming page (equals own task).

**SAA7118** 

In VBI pass through operation the processing of prescaler and vertical scaling has to be set to no-processing, however, the horizontal fine scaling VPD can be activated. Upscaling (oversampling, zooming), free of frequency folding, up to a factor of 3.5 can be achieved, as required by some software data slicing algorithms.

These raw samples are transported through the image port as valid data and can be output as Y only format. The lines are framed by SAV and EAV codes.

8.4.1 ACQUISITION CONTROL AND TASK HANDLING (SUBADDRESSES 80H, 90H, 91H, 94H TO 9FH AND C4H TO CFH)

The acquisition control receives horizontal and vertical synchronization signals from the decoder section or from the X-port. The acquisition window is generated via pixel and line counters at the appropriate places in the data path. From X-port only qualified pixels and lines (lines with qualified pixel) are counted.

The acquisition window parameters are as follows:

 Signal source selection regarding input video stream and formats from the decoder, or from X-port (programming bits SCSRC[1:0] 91H[5:4] and FSC[2:0] 91H[2:0])

**Remark**: The input of raw VBI-data from the internal decoder should be controlled via the decoder output formatter and the LCR registers (see Section 8.3)

- Vertical offset defined in lines of the video source, parameter YO[11:0] 99H[3:0] 98H[7:0]
- Vertical length defined in lines of the video source, parameter YS[11:0] 9BH[3:0] 9AH[7:0]
- Vertical length defined in number of target lines, as a result of vertical scaling, parameter YD[11:0] 9FH[3:0] 9EH[7:0]
- Horizontal offset defined in number of pixels of the video source, parameter XO[11:0] 95H[3:0] 94H[7:0]
- Horizontal length defined in number of pixels of the video source, parameter XS[11:0] 97H[3:0] 96H[7:0]
- Horizontal destination size, defined in target pixels after fine scaling, parameter XD[11:0] 9DH[3:0] 9CH[7:0].

The source start offset (XO11 to XO0 and YO11 to YO0) opens the acquisition window, and the target size (XD11 to XD0, YD11 to YD0) closes the window, but the window is cut vertically, if there are less output lines than expected. The trigger events for the pixel and line counts are the horizontal and vertical reference edges as defined in subaddress 92H.

The task handling is controlled by subaddress 90H (see Section 8.4.1.2).

#### 8.4.1.1 Input field processing

The trigger event for the field sequence detection from external signals (X-port) are defined in subaddress 92H. From the X-port the state of the scalers H-reference signal at the time of the V-reference edge is taken as field sequence identifier FID. For example, if the falling edge of the XRV input signal is the reference and the state of XRH input is logic 0 at that time, the detected field ID is logic 0.

The bits XFDV[92H[7]] and XFDH[92H[6]] define the detection event and state of the flag from the X-port. For the default setting of XFDV and XFDH at '00' the state of the H-input at the falling edge of the V-input is taken.

The scaler directly gets a corresponding field ID information from the SAA7118 decoder path.

The FID flag is used to determine whether the first or second field of a frame is going to be processed within the scaler and it is used as trigger condition for the task handling (see bits STRC[1:0] 90H[1:0]).

According to ITU 656, when FID is at logic 0 means first field of a frame. To ease the application, the polarities of the detection results on the X-port signals and the internal decoder ID can be changed via XFDH.

As the V-sync from the decoder path has a half line timing (due to the interlaced video signal), but the scaler processing only knows about full lines, during 1st fields from the decoder the line count of the scaler possibly shifts by one line, compared to the 2nd field. This can be compensated for by switching the V-trigger event, as defined by XDV0, to the opposite V-sync edge or by using the vertical scalers phase offsets. The vertical timing of the decoder can be seen in Figs 28 and 29.

As the H and V reference events inside the ITU 656 data stream (from X-port) and the real-time reference signals from the decoder path are processed differently, the trigger events for the input acquisition also have to be programmed differently.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 9 Processing trigger and start

| DESCRIPTION  | XDV1<br>92H[5] | XDV0<br>92H[4] | XDH<br>92H[2] |
|--|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| Internal decoder: The processing triggers at the falling edge of the V123 pulse (see Figs 28 (50 Hz) and 29 (60 Hz)), and starts earliest with the rising edge of the decoder HREF at line number: |                |                |               |
| 4/7 (50/60 Hz, 1st field), respectively 3/6 (50/60 Hz, 2nd field) (decoder count)  | 0              | 1              | 0             |
| 2/5 (50/60 Hz, 1st field), respectively 2/5 (50/60 Hz, 2nd field) (decoder count)  | 0              | 0              | 0             |
| <b>External ITU 656 stream</b> : The processing starts earliest with SAV at line number 23 (50 Hz system), respectively line 20 (60 Hz system) (according to ITU 656 count)                        | 0              | 0              | 0             |

#### 8.4.1.2 Task handling

The task handler controls the switching between the two programming register sets. It is controlled by subaddresses 90H and C0H. A task is enabled via the global control bits TEA[80H[4]] and TEB[80H[5]].

The handler is then triggered by events, which can be defined for each register set.

In the event of a programming error the task handling and the complete scaler can be reset to the initial states by setting the software reset bit SWRST[88H[5]] to logic 0. Especially if the programming registers, related acquisition window and scale are reprogrammed while a task is active, a software reset **must** be performed after programming.

Contrary to the disabling/enabling of a task, which is evaluated at the end of a running task, when SWRST is at logic 0 it sets the internal state machines directly to their idle states.

The start condition for the handler is defined by bits STRC[1:0] 90H[1:0] and means: start immediately, wait for next V-sync, next FID at logic 0 or next FID at logic 1. The FID is evaluated, if the vertical and horizontal offsets are reached.

When RPTSK[90H[2]] is at logic 1 the actual running task is repeated (under the defined trigger conditions), before handing control over to the alternate task.

To support field rate reduction, the handler is also enabled to skip fields (bits FSKP[2:0] 90H[5:3]) before executing the task. A TOGGLE flag is generated (used for the correct output field processing), which changes state at the beginning of a task, every time a task is activated. Examples are given in Section 8.4.1.3.

#### Remarks:

 To activate a task the start condition must be fulfilled and the acquisition window offsets must be reached. For example, in case of 'start immediately', and two regions are defined for one field, the offset of the lower region must be greater than (offset + length) the upper region, if not, the actual counted H and V position at the end of the upper task is beyond the programmed offsets and the processing will 'wait for next V'.

- Basically the trigger conditions are checked, when a task is activated. It is important to realize, that they are not checked while a task is inactive. So you can not trigger to next logic 0 or logic 1 with overlapping offset and active video ranges between the tasks (e.g. task A STRC[2:0] = 2, YO[11:0] = 310 and task B STRC[2:0] = 3, YO[11:0] = 310 results in output field rate of <sup>50</sup>/<sub>3</sub> Hz).
- After power-on or software reset (via SWRST[88H[5]]) task B gets priority over task A.

### 8.4.1.3 Output field processing

As a reference for the output field processing, two signals are available for the back-end hardware.

These signals are the input field ID from the scaler source and a TOOGLE flag, which shows that an active task is used an odd (1, 3, 5...) or even (2, 4, 6...) number of times. Using a single or both tasks and reducing the field or frame rate with the task handling functionality, the TOGGLE information can be used, to reconstruct an interlaced scaled picture at a reduced frame rate. The TOGGLE flag isn't synchronized to the input field detection, as it is only dependent on the interpretation of this information by the external hardware, whether the output of the scaler is processed correctly (see Section 8.4.3).

With OFIDC = 0, the scalers input field ID is available as output field ID on bit D6 of SAV and EAV, respectively on pin IGP0 (IGP1), if FID output is selected.

When OFIDC[90H[6]] = 1, the TOGGLE information is available as output field ID on bit D6 of SAV and EAV, respectively on pin IGP0 (IGP1), if FID output is selected.

Multistandard video decoder with

adaptive

comb filter and component video input

Additionally the bit D7 of SAV and EAV can be defined via CONLH[90H[7]]. CONLH[90H[7]] = 0 (default) sets D7 to logic 1, a logic 1 inverts the SAV/EAV bit D7. So it is possible to mark the output of the both tasks by different SAV/EAV codes. This bit can also be seen as 'task flag' on the pins IGP0 (IGP1), if TASK output is selected.

Table 10 Examples for field processing

|  |                          |               |               |                                    |               |               | FI            | ELD S         | EQUE          | ENCE                | FRAM          | E/FIEI        | _D                                    |                  |               |               |                  |               |               |
|--|--------------------------|---------------|---------------|------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| SUBJECT  | EXAMPLE 1 <sup>(1)</sup> |               |               | <b>EXAMPLE 2</b> <sup>(2)(3)</sup> |               |               |               | EX            | AMPL          | E 3 <sup>(2)(</sup> | 4)(5)         |               | <b>EXAMPLE 4</b> <sup>(2)(4)(6)</sup> |                  |               |               |                  |               |               |
|  | 1/1                      | 1/2           | 2/1           | 1/1                                | 1/2           | 2/1           | 2/2           | 1/1           | 1/2           | 2/1                 | 2/2           | 3/1           | 3/2                                   | 1/1              | 1/2           | 2/1           | 2/2              | 3/1           | 3/2           |
| Processed by task  | Α                        | Α             | Α             | В                                  | Α             | В             | Α             | В             | В             | Α                   | В             | В             | Α                                     | В                | В             | Α             | В                | В             | Α             |
| State of detected ITU 656 FID                                      | 0                        | 1             | 0             | 0                                  | 1             | 0             | 1             | 0             | 1             | 0                   | 1             | 0             | 1                                     | 0                | 1             | 0             | 1                | 0             | 1             |
| TOGGLE flag  | 1                        | 0             | 1             | 1                                  | 1             | 0             | 0             | 1             | 0             | 1                   | 1             | 0             | 0                                     | 0 <sup>(7)</sup> | 1             | 1             | 1 <sup>(7)</sup> | 0             | 0             |
| Bit D6 of SAV/EAV byte   | 0                        | 1             | 0             | 0                                  | 1             | 0             | 1             | 1             | 0             | 1                   | 1             | 0             | 0                                     | 0(7)             | 1             | 1             | 1(7)             | 0             | 0             |
| Required sequence conversion at the vertical scaler <sup>(8)</sup> | UP<br>↓<br>UP            | LO<br>↓<br>LO | UP<br>→<br>UP | UP<br>↓<br>UP                      | LO<br>↓<br>LO | UP<br>↓<br>UP | LO<br>↓<br>LO | UP<br>↓<br>LO | LO<br>↓<br>UP | UP<br>↓<br>LO       | LO<br>↓<br>LO | UP<br>↓<br>UP | LO<br>→<br>UP                         | UP<br>↓<br>UP    | LO<br>↓<br>LO | UP<br>→<br>LO | LO<br>↓<br>LO    | UP<br>↓<br>UP | LO<br>→<br>UP |
| Output <sup>(9)</sup>  | 0                        | 0             | 0             | 0                                  | 0             | 0             | 0             | 0             | 0             | 0                   | 0             | 0             | 0                                     | NO               | 0             | 0             | NO               | 0             | 0             |

#### Notes

- 1. Single task every field; OFIDC = 0; subaddress 90H at 40H; TEB[80H[5]] = 0.
- 2. Tasks are used to scale to different output windows, priority on task B after SWRST.
- 3. Both tasks at  $\frac{1}{2}$  frame rate; OFIDC = 0; subaddresses 90H at 43H and C0H at 42H.
- 4. In examples 3 and 4 the association between input FID and tasks can be flipped, dependent on which time the SWRST is de-asserted.
- 5. Task B at  $\frac{2}{3}$  frame rate constructed from neighbouring motion phases; task A at  $\frac{1}{3}$  frame rate of equidistant motion phases; OFIDC = 1; subaddresses 90H at 41H and C0H at 45H.
- 6. Task A and B at  $\frac{1}{3}$  frame rate of equidistant motion phases; OFIDC = 1; subaddresses 90H at 41H and C0H at 49H.
- 7. State of prior field.
- 8. It is assumed that input/output FID = 0 (= upper lines); UP = upper lines; LO = lower lines.
- 9. O = data output; NO = no output.

**SAA7118** 

#### 8.4.2 HORIZONTAL SCALING

The overall horizontal required scaling factor has to be split into a binary and a rational value according to the equation:

H-scale ratio  $= \frac{\text{output pixel}}{\text{input pixel}}$ 

H-scale ratio =  $\frac{1}{XPSC[5:0]} \times \frac{1024}{XSCY[12:0]}$ 

where the parameter of prescaler XPSC[5:0] = 1 to 63 and the parameter of VPD phase interpolation

XSCY[12:0] = 300 to 8191 (0 to 299 are only theoretical values). For example,  $\frac{1}{3.5}$  is to split in  $\frac{1}{4} \times 1.14286$ . The binary factor is processed by the prescaler, the arbitrary non-integer ratio is achieved via the variable phase delay VPD circuitry, called horizontal fine scaling. The latter calculates horizontally interpolated new samples with a 6-bit phase accuracy, which relates to less than 1 ns jitter for regular sampling scheme. Prescaler and fine scaler create the horizontal scaler of the SAA7118.

Using the accumulation length function of the prescaler (XACL[5:0] A1H[5:0]), application and destination dependent (e.g. scale for display or for a compression machine), a compromise between visible bandwidth and alias suppression can be determined.

### 8.4.2.1 Horizontal prescaler (subaddresses A0H to A7H and D0H to D7H)

The prescaling function consists of an FIR anti-alias filter stage and an integer prescaler, which creates an adaptive prescale dependent low-pass filter to balance sharpness and aliasing effects.

The FIR prefilter stage implements different low-pass characteristics to reduce alias for downscales in the range of 1 to  $^{1}\!/_{2}$ . A CIF optimized filter is built-in, which reduces artefacts for CIF output formats (to be used in combination with the prescaler set to  $^{1}\!/_{2}$  scale); see Table 11.

The function of the prescaler is defined by:

- An integer prescaling ratio XPSC[5:0] A0H[5:0] (equals 1 to 63), which covers the integer downscale range 1 to ½63
- An averaging sequence length XACL[5:0] A1H[5:0] (equals 0 to 63); range 1 to 64
- A DC gain renormalization XDCG[2:0] A2H[2:0];
   1 down to ½128

• The bit XC2\_1[A2H[3]], which defines the weighting of the incoming pixels during the averaging process:

 $- XC2_1 = 0 \Rightarrow 1 + 1... + 1 + 1$ 

$$- XC2 1 = 1 \Rightarrow 1 + 2... + 2 + 1$$

The prescaler creates a prescale dependent FIR low-pass, with up to (64 + 7) filter taps. The parameter XACL[5:0] can be used to vary the low-pass characteristic for a given integer prescale of  ${}^{1}\chi_{PSC[5:0]}$ . The user can therefore decide between signal bandwidth (sharpness impression) and alias.

Equation for XPSC[5:0] calculation is:

$$XPSC[5:0] = lower integer of \frac{Npix\_in}{Npix\_out}$$

where,

the range is 1 to 63 (value 0 is not allowed);

Npix\_in = number of input pixel, and

Npix\_out = number of desired output pixel over the complete horizontal scaler.

The use of the prescaler results in a XACL[5:0] and XC2\_1 dependent gain amplification. The amplification can be calculated according to the equation:

DC gain = 
$$[(XACL[5:0] - XC2_1) + 1] \times (XC2_1 + 1)$$

It is recommended to use sequence lengths and weights, which results in a 2<sup>N</sup> DC gain amplification, as these amplitudes can be renormalized by the XDCG[2:0]

controlled  $\frac{1}{2^N}$  shifter of the prescaler.

The renormalization range of XDCG[2:0] is 1,  $\frac{1}{2}$ ... down to  $\frac{1}{128}$ .

Other amplifications have to be normalized by using the following BCS control circuitry. In these cases the prescaler has to be set to an overall gain of  $\leq 1$ , e.g. for an accumulation sequence of '1 + 1 + 1' (XACL[5:0] = 2 and XC2\_1 = 0), XDCG[2:0] must be set to '010', this equals  $\frac{1}{4}$  and the BCS has to amplify the signal to  $\frac{4}{3}$  (SATN[7:0] and CONT[7:0] value = lower integer of  $\frac{4}{3} \times 64$ ).

The use of XACL[5:0] is XPSC[5:0] dependent. XACL[5:0] must be  $<2 \times XPSC[5:0]$ .

XACL[5:0] can be used to find a compromise between bandwidth (sharpness) and alias effects.

**SAA7118** 

**Remark**: Due to bandwidth considerations XPSC[5:0] and XACL[5:0] can be chosen different to the previously mentioned equations or Table 12, as the H-phase scaling is able to scale in the range from zooming up by factor 3 to downscale by a factor of  $\frac{1024}{8191}$ .

Figs 33 and 34 show some resulting frequency characteristics of the prescaler.

Table 12 shows the recommended prescaler programming. Other programmings, other than given in Table 12, may result in better alias suppression, but the resulting DC gain amplification needs to be compensated by the BCS control, according to the equation:

CONT[7:0] = SATN[7:0] = lower integer of 
$$\frac{2^{XDCG[2:0]}}{DC \text{ gain} \times 64}$$

Where:

 $2^{XDCG[2:0]} \ge DC$  gain

DC gain =  $(XC2_1 + 1) \times XACL[5:0] + (1 - XC2_1)$ .

For example, if XACL[5:0] = 5, XC2\_1 = 1, then the DC gain = 10 and the required XDCG[2:0] = 4.

The horizontal source acquisition timing and the prescaling ratio is identical for both the luminance path and chrominance path, but the FIR filter settings can be defined differently in the two channels.

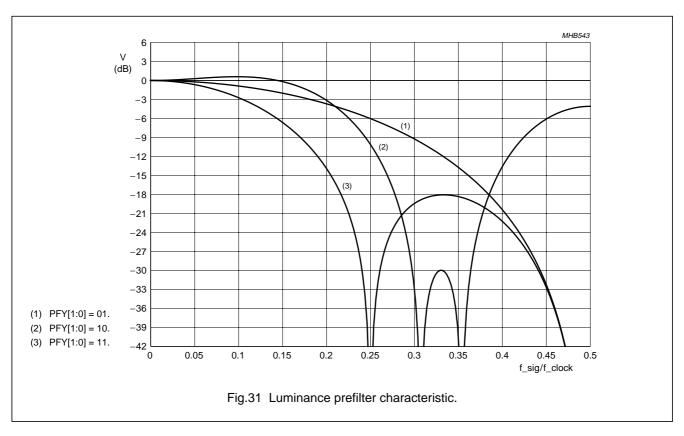
Fade-in and fade-out of the filters is achieved by copying an original source sample each as first and last pixel after prescaling.

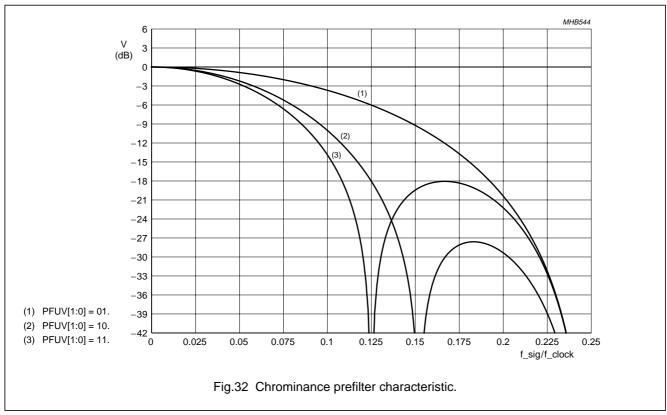
Figs 31 and 32 show the frequency characteristics of the selectable FIR filters.

Table 11 FIR prefilter functions

| PFUV[1:0] A2H[7:6]<br>PFY[1:0] A2H[5:4] | LUMINANCE FILTER COEFFICIENTS | CHROMINANCE COEFFICIENTS |
|---|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 00                                      | bypassed                      | bypassed                 |
| 01                                      | 1 2 1                         | 1 2 1                    |
| 10                                      | −1 1 1.75 4.5 1.75 1 −1       | 3 8 10 8 3               |
| 11                                      | 12221                         | 12221                    |

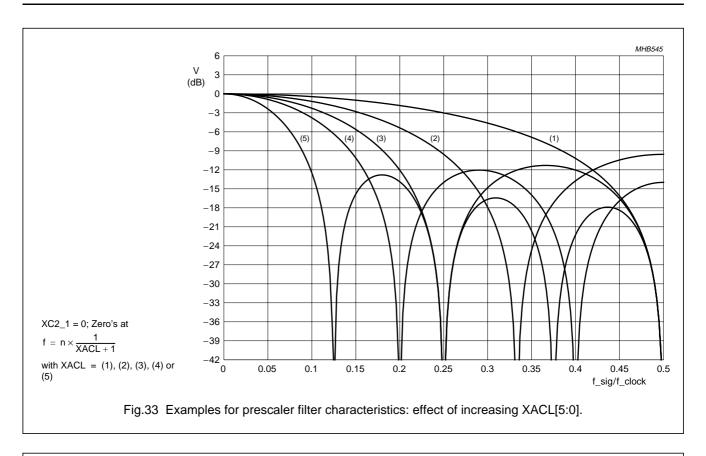
**SAA7118** 

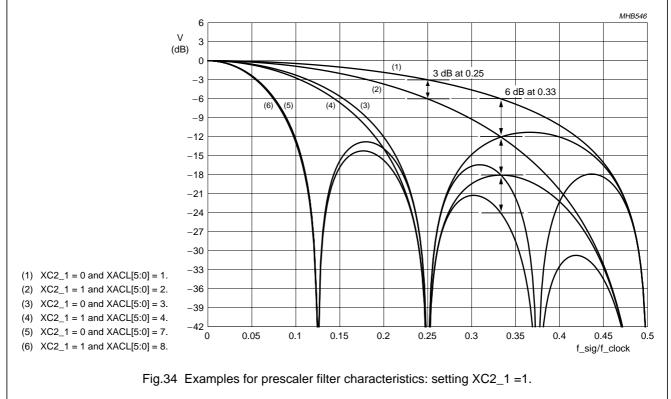




## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 





# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 12 XACL[5:0] example of usage

|                   |               |                | R                                    | ECOMMENDE                                   | ED VALUES |                                |   |   |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------------------------------|---|-----------|--------------------------------|---|---|
| PRESCALE<br>RATIO | XPSC<br>[5:0] |                | OWER BAND                            |   |           | GHER BANI<br>QUIREMEN          |   | FIR<br>PREFILTER<br>PFY (P <sub>B</sub> -P <sub>R</sub> ) |
|                   |               | XACL[5:0]      | XC2_1                                | XDCG[2:0]                                   | XACL[5:0] | XC2_1                          | XDCG[2:0]                                     | · · · (· B · K)   |
| 1                 | 1             | 0              | 0                                    | 0   | 0         | 0                              | 0   | 0 to 2  |
| 1/2               | 2             | 2              | 1                                    | 2   | 1         | 0                              | 1   | 0 to 2  |
|                   |               |                | $(1\ 2\ 1) \times \frac{1}{4}^{(1)}$ |   |           | $(1\ 1) \times \frac{1}{2}(1)$ |   |   |
| 1/3               | 3             | 4              | 1                                    | 3   | 3         | 0                              | 2   | 2   |
|                   |               | (1             | $12221) \times \frac{1}{8}$          | 1)  | (*        | (1)                            |   |   |
| 1/4               | 4             | 7              | 0                                    | 3   | 4         | 2                              |   |   |
|                   |               | (1 1           | 111111)×                             | 1/8(1)                                      | (1        |                                |   |   |
| 1/5               | 5             | 8              | 1                                    | 4   | 7         | 0                              | 3   | 2   |
|                   |               | (1 2 2         | 2 2 2 2 2 1) ×                       | <sup>1</sup> / <sub>16</sub> <sup>(1)</sup> |           | 1 1 1 1 1 1) >                 | < <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> (1)             |   |
| 1/6               | 6             | 8              | 1                                    | 4   | 7         | 0                              | 3   | 3   |
|                   |               | (1 2 2         | 2 2 2 2 2 1) ×                       | <sup>1</sup> / <sub>16</sub> <sup>(1)</sup> | (1 1 ′    | 1 1 1 1 1 1) >                 | < <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> (1)             |   |
| 1/7               | 7             | 8              | 1                                    | 4   | 7         | 0                              | 3   | 3   |
|                   |               | (1 2 2         | 22221)×                              | <sup>1</sup> / <sub>16</sub> <sup>(1)</sup> | (1 1 ′    | 1 1 1 1 1 1) >                 | < <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> (1)             |   |
| 1/8               | 8             | 15             | 0                                    | 4   | 8         | 1                              | 4   | 3   |
|                   |               | ,              | 11111111                             | $11) \times \frac{1}{16}$                   | · · ·     | 2 2 2 2 2 1) :                 | × <sup>1</sup> ⁄ <sub>16</sub> <sup>(1)</sup> |   |
| 1/9               | 9             | 15             | 0                                    | 4   | 8         | 1                              | 4   | 3   |
|                   |               | (111111        | 11111111                             | $11) \times \frac{1}{16}$                   | (1 2 2    | 2 2 2 2 2 1) :                 | × <sup>1</sup> ⁄ <sub>16</sub> <sup>(1)</sup> |   |
| 1/10              | 10            | 16             | 1                                    | 5   | 8         | 1                              | 4   | 3   |
|                   |               | (1 2 2 2 2 2 2 | 2222222                              | $2\ 2\ 1) \times \frac{1}{32}^{(1)}$        | (1 2 2    | 2 2 2 2 2 1) :                 | × <sup>1</sup> ⁄ <sub>16</sub> <sup>(1)</sup> |   |
| 1/13              | 13            | 16             | 1                                    | 5   | 16        | 1                              | 5   | 3   |
| 1/15              | 15            | 31             | 0                                    | 5   | 16        | 1                              | 5   | 3   |
| 1/16              | 16            | 32             | 1                                    | 6   | 16        | 1                              | 5   | 3   |
| 1/19              | 19            | 32             | 1                                    | 6   | 32        | 1                              | 6   | 3   |
| 1/31              | 31            | 32             | 1                                    | 6   | 32        | 1                              | 6   | 3   |
| 1/32              | 32            | 63             | 1                                    | 7   | 32        | 1                              | 6   | 3   |
| 1/35              | 35            | 63             | 1                                    | 7   | 63        | 7                              | 3   |   |

#### Note

1. Resulting FIR function.

**SAA7118** 

8.4.2.2 Horizontal fine scaling (variable phase delay filter; subaddresses A8H to AFH and D8H to DFH)

The horizontal fine scaling (VPD) should operate at scaling ratios between  $\frac{1}{2}$  and 2 (0.8 and 1.6), but can also be used for direct scaling in the range from  $\frac{1}{7.999}$  to (theoretical) zoom 3.5 (restriction due to the internal data path architecture), without prescaler.

In combination with the prescaler a compromise between sharpness impression and alias can be found, which is a signal source and application dependent.

For the luminance channel a filter structure with 10 taps is implemented, and for the chrominance a filter with 4 taps.

Luminance and chrominance scale increments (XSCY[12:0] A9H[4:0]A8H[7:0] and XSCC[12:0] ADH[4:0]ACH[7:0]) are defined independently, but must be set in a 2 : 1 relationship in the actual data path implementation. The phase offsets XPHY[7:0] AAH[7:0] and XPHC[7:0] AEH[7:0] can be used to shift the sample phases slightly. XPHY[7:0] and XPHC[7:0] covers the phase offset range 7.999T to  $\frac{1}{32}$ T. The phase offsets should also be programmed in a 2 : 1 ratio.

The underlying phase controlling DTO has a 13-bit resolution.

According to the equations

$$XSCY[12:0] = 1024 \times \frac{Npix\_in}{XPSC[5:0]} \times \frac{1}{Npix\_out} \text{ and}$$
$$XSCC[12:0] = \frac{XSCY[12:0]}{2}$$

the VPD covers the scale range from 0.125 to zoom 3.5. VPD acts equivalent to a polyphase filter with 64 possible phases. In combination with the prescaler, it is possible to get very accurate samples from a highly anti-aliased integer downscaled input picture.

#### 8.4.3 VERTICAL SCALING

The vertical scaler of the SAA7118 consists of a line FIFO buffer for line repetition and the vertical scaler block, which implements the vertical scaling on the input data stream in 2 different operational modes from theoretical zoom by 64 down to icon size  $1_{64}$ . The vertical scaler is located between the BCS and horizontal fine scaler, so that the BCS can be used to compensate the DC gain amplification of the ACM mode (see Section 8.4.3.2) as the internal RAMs are only 8-bit wide.

8.4.3.1 Line FIFO buffer (subaddresses 91H, B4H and C1H, E4H)

The line FIFO buffer is a dual ported RAM structure for 768 pixels, with asynchronous write and read access. The line buffer can be used for various functions, but not all functions may be available simultaneously.

The line buffer can buffer a complete unscaled active video line or more than one shorter lines (only for non-mirror mode), for selective repetition for vertical zoom-up.

For zooming up 240 lines to 288 lines e.g., every fourth line is requested (read) twice from the vertical scaling circuitry for calculation.

For conversion of a 4:2:0 or 4:1:0 input sampling scheme (MPEG, video phone, Indeo YUV-9) to ITU like sampling scheme 4:2:2, the chrominance line buffer is read twice or four times, before being refilled again by the source. It has to be preserved by means of the input acquisition window definition, so that the processing starts with a line containing luminance and chrominance information for 4:2:0 and 4:1:0 input. The bits FSC[2:1] 91H[2:1] define the distance between the Y/C lines. In the event of 4:2:2 and 4:1:1 FSC2 and FSC1 have to be set to '00'.

The line buffer can also be used for mirroring, i.e. for flipping the image left to right, for the vanity picture in video phone applications (bit YMIR[B4H[4]]). In mirror mode only one active prescaled line can be held in the FIFO at a time.

The line buffer can be utilized as an excessive pipeline buffer for discontinuous and variable rate transfer conditions at the expansion port or image port.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

8.4.3.2 Vertical scaler (subaddresses B0H to BFH and E0H to EFH)

Vertical scaling of any ratio from 64 (theoretical zoom) to  $\frac{1}{63}$  (icon) can be applied.

The vertical scaling block consists of another line delay, and the vertical filter structure, that can operate in two different modes; Linear Phase Interpolation (LPI) and accumulation (ACM) mode. These are controlled by YMODE[B4H[0]]:

- LPI mode: In LPI mode (YMODE = 0) two neighbouring lines of the source video stream are added together, but weighted by factors corresponding to the vertical position (phase) of the target output line relative to the source lines. This linear interpolation has a 6-bit phase resolution, which equals 64 intra line phases. It interpolates between two consecutive input lines only. LPI mode should be applied for scaling ratios around 1 (down to ½), it must be applied for vertical zooming.
- ACM mode: The vertical Accumulation (ACM) mode (YMODE = 1) represents a vertical averaging window over multiple lines, sliding over the field. This mode also generates phase correct output lines. The averaging window length corresponds to the scaling ratio, resulting in an adaptive vertical low-pass effect, to greatly reduce aliasing artefacts. ACM can be applied for downscales only from ratio 1 down to ½64. ACM results in a scale dependent DC gain amplification, which has to be precorrected by the BCS control of the scaler part.

The phase and scale controlling DTO calculates in 16-bit resolution, controlled by parameters YSCY[15:0] B1H[7:0] B0H[7:0] and YSCC[15:0] B3H[7:0] B2H[7:0], continuously over the entire filed. A start offset can be applied to the phase processing by means of the parameters YPY3[7:0] to YPY0[7:0] in BFH[7:0] to BCH[7:0] and YPC3[7:0] to YPC0[7:0] in BBH[7:0] to B8H[7:0]. The start phase covers the range of  $^{255}\!_{32}$  to  $^{1}\!_{32}$  lines offset.

By programming appropriate, opposite, vertical start phase values (subaddresses B8H to BFH and E8H to EFH) depending on odd/even field ID of the source video stream and A/B-page cycle, frame ID conversion and field rate conversion are supported (i.e. de-interlacing, re-interlacing).

Figs 35 and 36 and Tables 13 and 14 describe the use of the offsets.

Remark: The vertical start phase, as well as scaling ratio are defined independently for luminance and chrominance channel, but must be set to the same values in the actual implementation for accurate 4:2:2 output processing.

The vertical processing communicates on its input side with the line FIFO buffer. The scale related equations are:

- Scaling increment calculation for ACM and LPI mode, downscale and zoom: YSCY[15:0] and YSCC[15:0]
  - $= \text{ lower integer of } \left(1024 \times \frac{\text{Nline\_in}}{\text{Nline\_out}}\right)$
- BCS value to compensate DC gain in ACM mode (contrast and saturation have to be set): CONT[7:0] A5H[7:0] respectively SATN[7:0] A6H[7:0]

= lower integer of 
$$\left(\frac{\text{Nline\_out}}{\text{Nline\_in}} \times 64\right)$$
, or

= lower integer of 
$$\left(\frac{1024}{YSCY[15:0]} \times 64\right)$$

#### 8.4.3.3 Use of the vertical phase offsets

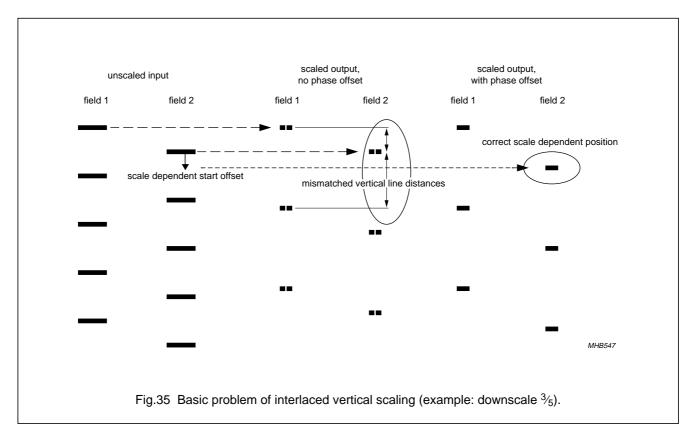
As described in Section 8.4.1.3, the scaler processing may run randomly over the interlaced input sequence. Additionally the interpretation and timing between ITU 656 field ID and real-time detection by means of the state of H-sync at the falling edge of V-sync may result in different field ID interpretation.

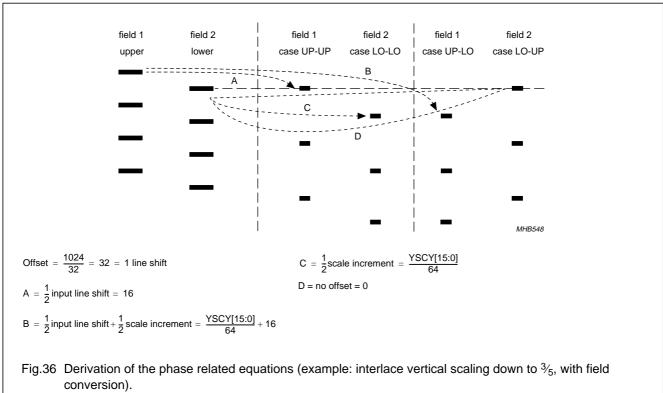
A vertically scaled interlaced output also gets a larger vertical sampling phase error, if the interlaced input fields are processed, without regard to the actual scale at the starting point of operation (see Fig.35).

For correct interlaced processing the vertical scaler must be used with respect to the interlace properties of the input signal and, if required, for conversion of the field sequences.

Four events should be considered, they are illustrated in Fig.36.

**SAA7118** 





58

2001 May 30

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

In Tables 13 and 14 PHO is a usable common phase offset.

It should be noted that the equations of Fig.36 produce an interpolated output, also for the unscaled case, as the geometrical reference position for all conversions is the position of the first line of the lower field (see Table 13).

If there is no need for UP-LO and LO-UP conversion and the input field ID is the reference for the back-end operation, then it is UP-LO = UP-UP and LO-UP = LO-LO and the  $\frac{1}{2}$  line phase shift (PHO + 16) that can be skipped. This case is listed in Table 14.

The SAA7118 supports 4 phase offset registers per task and component (luminance and chrominance). The value of 20H represents a phase shift of one line.

The registers are assigned to the following events; e.g. subaddresses B8H to BBH:

- B8H: 00 = input field ID 0, task status bit 0 (toggle status, see Section 8.4.1.3)
- B9H: 01 = input field ID 0, task status bit 1
- BAH: 10 = input field ID 1, task status bit 0
- BBH: 11 = input field ID 1, task status bit 1.

Depending on the input signal (interlaced or non-interlaced) and the task processing 50 Hz or field reduced processing with one or two tasks (see examples in Section 8.4.1.3), other combinations may also be possible, but the basic equations are the same.

Table 13 Examples for vertical phase offset usage: global equations

| INPUT FIELD UNDER PROCESSING | OUTPUT FIELD INTERPRETATION | USED ABBREVIATION | EQUATION FOR PHASE OFFSET CALCULATION (DECIMAL VALUES) |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|--|
| Upper input lines            | upper output lines          | UP-UP             | PHO + 16   |
| Upper input lines            | lower output lines          | UP-LO             | PHO + \frac{YSCY[15:0]}{64} + 16                       |
| Lower input lines            | upper output lines          | LO-UP             | PHO  |
| Lower input lines            | lower output lines          | LO-LO             | PHO + \frac{YSCY[15:0]}{64}                            |

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 14 Vertical phase offset usage; assignment of the phase offsets

| DETECTED INPUT<br>FIELD ID | TASK STATUS BIT | VERTICAL PHASE<br>OFFSET   | CASE                  | EQUATION TO BE USED   |
|----------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| 0 = upper lines            | 0               | YPY0[7:0] and              | case 1 <sup>(1)</sup> | UP-UP (PHO)   |
|                            |                 | YPC0[7:0]                  | case 2 <sup>(2)</sup> | UP-UP   |
|                            |                 |                            | case 3 <sup>(3)</sup> | UP-LO   |
| 0 = upper lines            | 1               | YPY1[7:0] and              | case 1                | UP-UP (PHO)   |
|                            |                 | YPC1[7:0]                  | case 2                | UP-LO   |
|                            |                 |                            | case 3                | UP-UP   |
| 1 = lower lines            | 0               | YPY2[7:0] and<br>YPC2[7:0] | case 1                | LO-LO $\left( PHO + \frac{YSCY[15:0]}{64} - 16 \right)$     |
|                            |                 |                            | case 2                | LO-UP   |
|                            |                 |                            | case 3                | LO-LO   |
| 1 = lower lines            | 1               | YPY3[7:0] and<br>YPC3[7:0] | case 1                | $LO\text{-}LO\left(PHO + \frac{YSCY[15:0]}{64} - 16\right)$ |
|                            |                 |                            | case 2                | LO-LO   |
|                            |                 |                            | case 3                | LO-UP   |

#### **Notes**

- 1. Case 1: OFIDC[90H[6]] = 0; scaler input field ID as output ID; back-end interprets output field ID at logic 0 as upper output lines.
- 2. Case 2: OFIDC[90H[6]] = 1; task status bit as output ID; back-end interprets output field ID at logic 0 as upper output lines.
- 3. Case 3: OFIDC[90H[6]] = 1; task status bit as output ID; back-end interprets output field ID at logic 1 as upper output lines.

### 8.5 VBI-data decoder and capture (subaddresses 40H to 7FH)

The SAA7118 contains a versatile VBI-data decoder.

The implementation and programming model is in accordance with the VBI-data slicer built into the multimedia video data acquisition circuit SAA5284.

The circuitry recovers the actual clock phase during the clock run-in period, slices the data bits with the selected data rate, and groups them into bytes. The result is buffered into a dedicated VBI-data FIFO with a capacity of  $2\times56$  bytes ( $2\times14$  Dwords). The clock frequency, signal source, field frequency and accepted error count must be defined in subaddress 40H.

The supported VBI-data standards are shown in Table 15.

For lines 2 to 24 of a field, per VBI line, 1 of 16 standards can be selected (LCR24\_[7:0] to LCR2\_[7:0] in 57H[7:0] to 41H[7:0]:  $23 \times 2 \times 4$  bit programming bits).

The definition for line 24 is valid for the rest of the corresponding field, normally no text data (video data) should be selected there (LCR24\_[7:0] = FFH) to stop the activity of the VBI-data slicer during active video.

To adjust the slicers processing to the input signal source, there are offsets in the horizontal and vertical direction available: parameters HOFF[10:0] 5BH[2:0] 59H[7:0], VOFF[8:0] 5BH[4] 5AH[7:0] and FOFF[5BH[7]]).

Contrary to the scalers counting, the slicers offsets define the position of the H and V trigger events related to the processed video field. The trigger events are the falling edge of HREF and the falling edge of V123 from the decoder processing part.

The relationship of these programming values to the input signal and the recommended values can be seen in Tables 5 to 8.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 15 Data types supported by the data slicer block

| DT[3:0]<br>62H[3:0] | STANDARD TYPE                                    | DATA RATE<br>(Mbits/s) | FRAMING CODE       | FC<br>WINDOW | HAM<br>CHECK |
|---------------------|--|------------------------|--------------------|--------------|--------------|
| 0000                | teletext EuroWST, CCST                           | 6.9375                 | 27H                | WST625       | always       |
| 0001                | European closed caption                          | 0.500                  | 001                | CC625        |              |
| 0010                | VPS  | 5                      | 9951H              | VPS          |              |
| 0011                | wide screen signalling bits                      | 5                      | 1E3C1FH            | WSS          |              |
| 0100                | US teletext (WST)                                | 5.7272                 | 27H                | WST525       | always       |
| 0101                | US closed caption (line 21)                      | 0.503                  | 001                | CC525        |              |
| 0110                | (video data selected)                            | 5                      | none               | disable      |              |
| 0111                | (raw data selected)                              | 5                      | none               | disable      |              |
| 1000                | teletext   | 6.9375                 | programmable       | general text | optional     |
| 1001                | VITC/EBU time codes (Europe)                     | 1.8125                 | programmable       | VITC625      |              |
| 1010                | VITC/SMPTE time codes (USA)                      | 1.7898                 | programmable       | VITC525      |              |
| 1011                |  | reser                  | ved                |              |              |
| 1100                | US NABTS   | 5.7272                 | programmable       | NABTS        | optional     |
| 1101                | MOJI (Japanese)                                  | 5.7272                 | programmable (A7H) | Japtext      |              |
| 1110                | Japanese format switch (L20/22)                  | 5                      | programmable       | open         |              |
| 1111                | no sliced data transmitted (video data selected) | 5                      | none               | disable      |              |

### 8.6 Image port output formatter (subaddresses 84H to 87H)

The output interface consists of a FIFO for video and for sliced text data, an arbitration circuit, which controls the mixed transfer of video and sliced text data over the I-port and a decoding and multiplexing unit, which generates the 8 or 16-bit wide output data stream and the accompanied reference and supporting information.

The clock for the output interface can be derived from an internal clock, decoder, expansion port, or an externally provided clock which is appropriate for e.g. VGA and frame buffer. The clock can be up to 33 MHz. The scaler provides the following video related timing reference events (signals), which are available on pins as defined by subaddresses 84H and 85H:

- · Output field ID
- · Start and end of vertical active video range
- · Start and end of active video line
- · Data qualifier or gated clock
- Actually activated programming page (if CONLH is used)
- Threshold controlled FIFO filling flags (empty, full, filled)
- · Sliced data marker.

The disconnected data stream at the scaler output is accompanied by a data valid flag (or data qualifier), or is transported via a gated clock. Clock cycles with invalid data on the I-port data bus (including the HPD pins in 16-bit output mode) are marked with code 00H.

The output interface also arbitrates the transfer between scaled video data and sliced text data over the I-port output.

The bits VITX1 and VITX0 (subaddress 86H) are used to control the arbitration.

As a further operation the serialization of the internal 32-bit Dwords to 8-bit or optional 16-bit output, as well as the insertion of the extended ITU 656 codes (SAV/EAV for video data, ANC or SAV/EAV codes for sliced text data) are done here.

For handshake with the VGA controller, or other memory or bus interface circuitry, programmable FIFO flags are provided (see Section 8.6.2).

**SAA7118** 

8.6.1 SCALER OUTPUT FORMATTER (SUBADDRESSES 93H AND C3H)

The output formatter organizes the packing into the output FIFO. The following formats are available:

 $Y-C_B-C_R$  4 : 2 : 2,  $Y-C_B-C_R$  4 : 1 : 1,  $Y-C_B-C_R$  4 : 2 : 0,  $Y-C_B-C_R$  4 : 1 : 0,  $Y-C_B-C_R$  4 : 1 : 0,  $Y-C_B-C_R$  5 : 0,  $Y-C_B-C_R$  6 : 0,  $Y-C_B-C_R$  7 : 0,  $Y-C_B-C_R$  93H[2:0],  $Y-C_B-C_R$  93H[2:0],  $Y-C_B-C_R$  93H[4:3] and  $Y-C_B-C_R$  93H[5]].

The data formats are defined on Dwords, or multiples, and are similar to the video formats as recommended for PCI multimedia applications (compares to SAA7146A), but planar formats are not supported.

FSI[2:0] defines the horizontal packing of the data, FOI[1:0] defines how many Y only lines are expected, before a Y/C line will be formatted. If FYSK is set to logic 0 preceding Y only lines will be skipped, and the output will always start with a Y/C line.

Additionally the output formatter limits the amplitude range of the video data (controlled by ILLV[85H[5]]); see Table 18.

Table 16 Byte stream for different output formats

| OUTPUT FORMAT                              |                  | BYTE SEQUENCE FOR 8-BIT OUTPUT MODES |                  |    |                  |    |                  |    |                  |    |                  |     |                  |     |
|--|------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------|----|------------------|----|------------------|----|------------------|----|------------------|-----|------------------|-----|
| Y-C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> 4 : 2 : 2 | C <sub>B</sub> 0 | Y0                                   | C <sub>R</sub> 0 | Y1 | C <sub>B</sub> 2 | Y2 | C <sub>R</sub> 2 | Y3 | C <sub>B</sub> 4 | Y4 | C <sub>R</sub> 4 | Y5  | C <sub>B</sub> 6 | Y6  |
| Y-C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> 4 : 1 : 1 | C <sub>B</sub> 0 | Y0                                   | C <sub>R</sub> 0 | Y1 | C <sub>B</sub> 4 | Y2 | C <sub>R</sub> 4 | Y3 | Y4               | Y5 | Y6               | Y7  | C <sub>B</sub> 8 | Y8  |
| Yonly                                      | Y0               | Y1                                   | Y2               | Y3 | Y4               | Y5 | Y6               | Y7 | Y8               | Y9 | Y10              | Y11 | Y12              | Y13 |

**Table 17** Explanation to Table 16

| NAME             | EXPLANATION   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| C <sub>B</sub> n | C <sub>B</sub> (B – Y) colour difference component, pixel number n = 0, 2, 4 to 718 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Yn               | Y (luminance) component, pixel number n = 0, 1, 2, 3 to 719                         |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| C <sub>R</sub> n | $C_R$ (R – Y) colour difference component, pixel number n = 0, 2, 4 to 718          |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 18 Limiting range on I-port

| LIMIT STEP   | VAL               | ID RANGE          | SUPPRESSED CODES ( | HEXADECIMAL VALUE) |
|--------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| ILLV[85H[5]] | DECIMAL VALUE     | HEXADECIMAL VALUE | LOWER RANGE        | UPPER RANGE        |
| 0            | 1 to 254 01 to FE |                   | 00                 | FF                 |
| 1            | 8 to 247          | 08 to F7          | 00 to 07           | F8 to FF           |

#### 8.6.2 VIDEO FIFO (SUBADDRESS 86H)

The video FIFO at the scaler output contains 32 Dwords. That corresponds to 64 pixels in 16-bit Y- $C_B$ - $C_R$  4 : 2 : 2 format. But as the entire scaler can act as a pipeline buffer, the actual available buffer capacity for the image port is much higher, and can exceed beyond a video line.

The image port, and the video FIFO, can operate with the video source clock (synchronous mode) or with an externally provided clock (asynchronous and burst mode), as appropriate for the VGA controller or attached frame buffer.

The video FIFO provides 4 internal flags, reporting to what extent the FIFO is actually filled.

### These are:

- The FIFO Almost Empty (FAE) flag
- The FIFO Combined Flag (FCF) or FIFO filled, which is set at almost full level and reset, with hysteresis, only after the level crosses below the almost empty mark
- The FIFO Almost Full (FAF) flag
- The FIFO Overflow (FOVL) flag.

The trigger levels for FAE and FAF are programmable by FFL[1:0] 86H[3:2] (16, 24, 28, full) and FEL[1:0] 86H[1:0] (16, 8, 4, empty).

The state of this flag can be seen on the pins IGP0 or IGP1. The pin mapping is defined by subaddresses 84H and 85H (see Section 9.6).

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 8.6.3 TEXT FIFO

The data of the terminal VBI-data slicer is collected in the text FIFO before the transmission over the I-port is requested (normally before the video window starts). It is partitioned into two FIFO sections. A complete line is filled into the FIFO before a data transfer is requested. So normally, one line of text data is ready for transfer, while the next text line is collected. Thus sliced text data is delivered as a block of qualified data, without any qualification gaps in the byte stream of the I-port.

The decoded VBI-data is collected in the dedicated VBI-data FIFO. After capture of a line is completed, the FIFO can be streamed through the image port, preceded by a header, telling line number and standard.

The VBI-data period can be signalled via the sliced data flag on pin IGP0 or IGP1. The decoded VBI-data is lead by the ITU ancillary data header (DID[5:0] 5DH[5:0] at value <3EH) or by SAV/EAV codes selectable by DID[5:0] at value 3EH or 3FH. Pin IGP0 or IGP1 is set, if the first byte of the ANC header is valid on the I-port bus. It is reset if an SAV occurs. So it may frame multiple lines of text data output, in case video processing starts with a distance of several video lines to the region of text data. Valid sliced data from the text FIFO is available on the I-port as long as the IGP0 or IGP1 flag is set and the data qualifier is active on pin IDQ.

The decoded VBI-data are presented in two different data formats, controlled by bit RECODE.

- RECODE = 1: values 00H and FFH will be recoded to even parity values 03H and FCH
- RECODE = 0: values 00H and FFH may occur in the data stream as detected.

### 8.6.4 VIDEO AND TEXT ARBITRATION (SUBADDRESS 86H)

Sliced text data and scaled video data are transferred over the same bus, the I-port. The mixed transfer is controlled by an arbitration circuit. If the video data is transferred without any interrupt and the video FIFO does not need to buffer any output pixel, the text data is inserted after the end of a scaled video line, normally during the blanking interval of the video.

8.6.5 DATA STREAM CODING AND REFERENCE SIGNAL GENERATION (SUBADDRESSES 84H, 85H AND 93H)

As H and V reference signals are logic 1, active gate signals are generated, which frame the transfer of the valid output data. As an alternative to the gates, H and V trigger pulses are generated on the rising edges of the gates.

Due to the dynamic FIFO behaviour of the complete scaler path, the output signal timing has no fixed timing relationship to the real-time input video stream. So fixed propagation delays, in terms of clock cycles, related to the analog input cannot be defined.

The data stream is accompanied by a data qualifier. Additionally invalid data cycles are marked with code 00H.

If ITU 656 like codes are not wanted, they can be suppressed in the output stream.

As a further option, it is possible to provide the scaler with an external gating signal on pin ITRDY. Thereby making it possible to hold the data output for a certain time and to get valid output data in bursts of a guaranteed length.

The sketched reference signals and events can be mapped to the I-port output pins IDQ, IGPH, IGPV, IGP0 and IGP1. For flexible use the polarities of all the outputs can be modified. The default polarity for the qualifier and reference signals is logic 1 (active).

Table 19 shows the relevant and supported SAV and EAV coding.

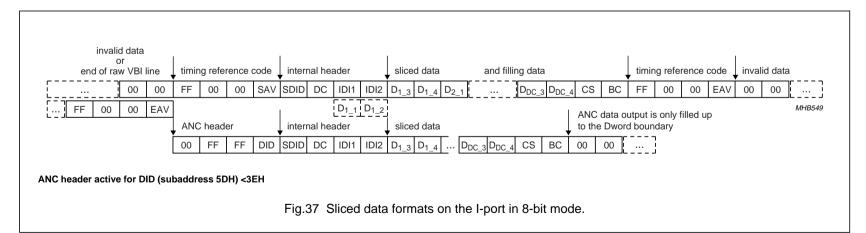
### ) )

| Table 19 | SAV/EAV | codes on | I-port |
|----------|---------|----------|--------|
|----------|---------|----------|--------|

| EVENT DESCRIPTION   | MSB <sup>(2)</sup> OF SAV | //EAV BYTE = 0   | MSB <sup>(2)</sup> OF SAV | COMMENT      |                                     |
|---|---------------------------|------------------|---------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|
|   | FIELD ID = 0              | FIELD ID = 1     | FIELD ID = 0              | FIELD ID = 1 |                                     |
| Next pixel is FIRST pixel of any active line                                    | 0E                        | 49               | 80                        | C7           | HREF = active;<br>VREF = active     |
| Previous pixel was LAST pixel of any active line, but not the last              | 13                        | 54               | 9D                        | DA           | HREF = inactive;<br>VREF = active   |
| Next pixel is FIRST pixel of any V-blanking line                                | 25                        | 62               | AB                        | EC           | HREF = active;<br>VREF = inactive   |
| Previous pixel was LAST pixel of the last active line or of any V-blanking line | 38                        | 7F               | B6                        | F1           | HREF = inactive;<br>VREF = inactive |
| No valid data, don't capture and don't increment pointer                        |                           | IDQ pin inactive |                           |              |                                     |

#### **Notes**

- 1. The leading byte sequence is: FFH-00H-00H.
- 2. The MSB of the SAV/EAV code byte is controlled by:
  - a) Scaler output data: task A  $\Rightarrow$  MSB =  $\overline{\text{CONLH}}$ [90H[7]]; task B  $\Rightarrow$  MSB =  $\overline{\text{CONLH}}$ [C0H[7]].
  - b) VBI-data slicer output data: DID[5:0] 5DH[5:0] = 3EH  $\Rightarrow$  MSB = 1; DID[5:0] 5DH[5:0] = 3FH  $\Rightarrow$  MSB = 0.



# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 20 Explanation to Fig.37

| NAME              | EXPLANATION   |
|-------------------|---|
| SAV               | start of active data; see Table 21  |
| SDID              | sliced data identification: NEP <sup>(1)</sup> , EP <sup>(2)</sup> , SDID5 to SDID0, freely programmable via I <sup>2</sup> C-bus subaddress 5EH, D5 to D0, e. g. to be used as source identifier |
| DC                | Dword count: NEP <sup>(1)</sup> , EP <sup>(2)</sup> , DC5 to DC0. DC describes the number of succeeding 32-bit words:   |
|                   | For SAV/EAV mode DC is fixed to 11 Dwords (byte value 4BH)  |
|                   | • For ANC mode it is: DC = ½(C + n), where C = 2 (the two data identification bytes IDI1 and IDI2) and n = number of decoded bytes according to the chosen text standard.                         |
|                   | It should be noted that the number of valid bytes inside the stream can be seen in the BC byte.   |
| IDI1              | internal data identification 1: $OP^{(3)}$ , FID (field 1 = 0, field 2 = 1),<br>LineNumber8 to LineNumber3 = Dword 1 byte 1; see Table 21   |
| IDI2              | internal data identification 2: OP <sup>(3)</sup> , LineNumber2 to LineNumber0, DataType3 to DataType0 = Dword 1 byte 2; see Table 21   |
| D <sub>n_m</sub>  | Dword number <b>m</b>   |
| D <sub>DC_4</sub> | last Dword byte 4, note: for SAV/EAV framing DC is fixed to 0BH, missing data bytes are filled up; the fill value is A0H  |
| CS                | the check sum byte, the check sum is accumulated from the SAV (respectively DID) byte to the D <sub>DC_4</sub> byte   |
| ВС                | number of valid sliced bytes counted from the IDI1 byte   |
| EAV               | end of active data; see Table 21  |

### **Notes**

- 1. Inverted EP (bit 7); for EP see note 2.
- 2. Even parity (bit 6) of bits 5 to 0.
- 3. Odd parity (bit 7) of bits 6 to 0.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 21 Bytes stream of the data slicer

| NICK<br>NAME      | COMMENT                            | D7                 | D6                  | D5                  | D4                  | D3                  | D2                  | D1                  | D0                  |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| DID,<br>SAV,      | subaddress<br>5DH = 00H            | NEP <sup>(1)</sup> | EP <sup>(2)</sup>   | 0                   | 1                   | 0                   | FID <sup>(3)</sup>  | I1 <sup>(4)</sup>   | IO <sup>(4)</sup>   |
| EAV               | subaddress 5DH;<br>D5 = 1          | NEP                | EP                  | 0                   | D4[5DH]             | D3[5DH]             | D2[5DH]             | D1[5DH]             | D0[5DH]             |
|                   | subaddress 5DH<br>D5 = 3EH; note 5 | 1                  | FID <sup>(3)</sup>  | <b>√</b> (6)        | H <sup>(7)</sup>    | P3                  | P2                  | P1                  | P0                  |
|                   | subaddress 5DH<br>D5 = 3FH; note 5 | 0                  | FID <sup>(3)</sup>  | V(6)                | H <sup>(7)</sup>    | P3                  | P2                  | P1                  | P0                  |
| SDID              | programmable via subaddress 5EH    | NEP                | EP                  | D5[5EH]             | D4[5EH]             | D3[5EH]             | D2[5EH]             | D1[5EH]             | D0[5EH]             |
| DC <sup>(8)</sup> |                                    | NEP                | EP <sup>(2)</sup>   | DC5                 | DC4                 | DC3                 | DC2                 | DC1                 | DC0                 |
| IDI1              |                                    | OP <sup>(9)</sup>  | FID <sup>(3)</sup>  | LN8 <sup>(10)</sup> | LN7 <sup>(10)</sup> | LN6 <sup>(10)</sup> | LN5 <sup>(10)</sup> | LN4 <sup>(10)</sup> | LN3 <sup>(10)</sup> |
| IDI2              |                                    | OP                 | LN2 <sup>(10)</sup> | LN1 <sup>(10)</sup> | LN0 <sup>(10)</sup> | DT3 <sup>(11)</sup> | DT2 <sup>(11)</sup> | DT1 <sup>(11)</sup> | DT0 <sup>(11)</sup> |
| CS                | check sum byte                     | CS6                | CS6                 | CS5                 | CS4                 | CS3                 | CS2                 | CS1                 | CS0                 |
| ВС                | valid byte count                   | OP                 | 0                   | CNT5                | CNT4                | CNT3                | CNT2                | CNT1                | CNT0                |

#### **Notes**

- 1. NEP = inverted EP (see note 2).
- 2. EP = Even Parity of bits 5 to 0.
- 3. FID = 0: field 1; FID = 1: field 2.
- 4. I1 = 0 and I0 = 0: before line 1; I1 = 0 and I0 = 1: lines 1 to 23; I1 = 1 and I0 = 0: after line 23; I1 = 1 and I0 = 1: line 24 to end of field.
- 5. Subaddress 5DH at 3EH and 3FH are used for ITU 656 like SAV/EAV header generation; recommended value.
- 6. V = 0: active video; V = 1: blanking.
- 7. H = 0: start of line; H = 1: end of line.
- 8. DC = Data Count in Dwords according to the data type.
- 9. OP = Odd Parity of bits 6 to 0.
- 10. LN = Line Number.
- 11. DT = Data Type according to table.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 8.7 Audio clock generation (subaddresses 30H to 3FH)

The SAA7118 incorporates the generation of a field-locked audio clock as an auxiliary function for video capture. An audio sample clock, that is locked to the field frequency, ensures that there is always the same predefined number of audio samples associated with a field, or a set of fields. That ensures synchronous playback of audio and video after digital recording (e.g. capture to hard disk), MPEG or other compression, or non-linear editing.

8.7.1 MASTER AUDIO CLOCK

The audio clock is synthesized from the same crystal frequency as the line-locked video clock is generated. The master audio clock is defined by the parameters:

 Audio master Clocks Per Field, ACPF[17:0] 32H[1:0] 31H[7:0] 30H[7:0] according to the equation:

$$ACPF[17:0] = round\left(\frac{audio\ frequency}{field\ frequency}\right)$$

 Audio master Clocks Nominal Increment, ACNI[21:0] 36H[5:0] 35H[7:0] 34H[7:0] according to the equation:

ACNI[21:0] = round 
$$\left(\frac{\text{audio frequency}}{\text{crystal frequency}} \times 2^{23}\right)$$

See Table 22 for examples.

Table 22 Programming examples for audio master clock generation

| XTALO         | FIELD             | A       | CPF   | A       | CNI    |
|---------------|-------------------|---------|-------|---------|--------|
| (MHz)         | (Hz)              | DECIMAL | HEX   | DECIMAL | HEX    |
| AMCLK = 256 × | 48 kHz (12.288 M  | Hz)     |       | •       |        |
| 22.44         | 50                | 245760  | 3C000 | 3210190 | 30FBCE |
| 32.11         | 59.94             | 205005  | 320CD | 3210190 | 30FBCE |
| 24 570        | 50                | _       | _     | _       | _      |
| 24.576        | 59.94             | _       | _     | _       | _      |
| AMCLK = 256 × | 44.1 kHz (11.2896 | MHz)    |       |         |        |
| 22.44         | 50                | 225792  | 37200 | 2949362 | 2D00F2 |
| 32.11         | 59.94             | 188348  | 2DFBC | 2949362 | 2D00F2 |
| 24.576        | 50                | 225792  | 37200 | 3853517 | 3ACCCD |
| 24.576        | 59.94             | 188348  | 2DFBC | 3853517 | 3ACCCD |
| AMCLK = 256 × | 32 kHz (8.192 MH  | z)      |       |         |        |
| 22.44         | 50                | 163840  | 28000 | 2140127 | 20A7DF |
| 32.11         | 59.94             | 136670  | 215DE | 2140127 | 20A7DF |
| 24 576        | 50                | 163840  | 28000 | 2796203 | 2AAAAB |
| 24.576        | 59.94             | 136670  | 215DE | 2796203 | 2AAAAB |

Remark: For standard applications the synthesized audio clock AMCLK can be used directly as master clock and as input clock for port AMXCLK (short cut) to generate ASCLK and ALRCLK. For high-end applications it is recommended to use an external analog PLL circuit to enhance the performance of the generated audio clock.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 8.7.2 SIGNALS ASCLK AND ALRCLK

Two binary divided signals ASCLK and ALRCLK are provided for slower serial digital audio signal transmission and for channel-select. The frequencies of these signals are defined by the following parameters:

• SDIV[5:0] 38H[5:0] according to the equation:

$$f_{ASCLK} = \frac{f_{AMXCLK}}{(SDIV + 1) \times 2} \Rightarrow SDIV[5:0] = \frac{f_{AMXCLK}}{2f_{ASCLK}} - 1$$

• LRDIV[5:0] 39H[5:0] according to the equation:  $f_{ALRCLK} = \frac{f_{ASCLK}}{LRDIV \times 2} \Rightarrow LRDIV[5:0] = \frac{f_{ASCLK}}{2f_{ALRCLK}}$ 

See Table 23 for examples.

Table 23 Programming examples for ASCLK/ALRCLK clock generation

| AMXCLK  | ASCLK  | SDIV    |     | ALRCLK | LRDIV   |     |  |
|---------|--------|---------|-----|--------|---------|-----|--|
| (MHz)   | (kHz)  | DECIMAL | HEX | (kHz)  | DECIMAL | HEX |  |
| 12 200  | 1536   | 3       | 03  | 10     | 16      | 10  |  |
| 12.288  | 768    | 7       | 07  | 48     | 8       | 08  |  |
| 11 2006 | 1411.2 | 3       | 03  | 44.1   | 16      | 10  |  |
| 11.2896 | 2822.4 | 1       | 01  | 44.1   | 32      | 10  |  |
| 9 102   | 1024   | 3       | 03  | 22     | 16      | 10  |  |
| 8.192   | 2048   | 1       | 01  | 32     | 32      | 10  |  |

68

#### 8.7.3 OTHER CONTROL SIGNALS

Further control signals are available to define reference clock edges and vertical references:

APLL[3AH[3]]; Audio PLL mode:

0: PLL closed

1: PLL open

AMVR[3AH[2]]; Audio Master clock Vertical Reference:

0: internal V

1: external V

LRPH[3AH[1]]; ALRCLK Phase

0: invert ASCLK, ALRCLK edges triggered by falling edge of ASCLK

1: don't invert ASCLK, ALRCLK edges triggered by rising edge of ASCLK

SCPH[3AH[0]]; ASCLK Phase:

0: invert AMXCLK, ASCLK edges triggered by falling edge of AMXCLK

1: don't invert AMXCLK, ASCLK edges triggered by rising edge of AMXCLK.

2001 May 30

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 9 INPUT/OUTPUT INTERFACES AND PORTS

The SAA7118 has 5 different I/O interfaces:

- Analog video input interface, for analog CVBS and/or Y and C input signals and/or component video signals
- · Audio clock port
- Digital real-time signal port (RT port)
- Digital video expansion port (X-port), for unscaled digital video input and output
- Digital image port (I-port) for scaled video data output and programming
- Digital host port (H-port) for extension of the image port or expansion port from 8 to 16-bit.

Component signals with e.g. sync-on-Y or sync-on-green are also supported; they are fed to two ADC channels, one for the video contents, the other for sync conversion. Additionally, there are four differential reference inputs, which must be connected to ground via a capacitor equivalent to the decoupling capacitors at the 16 inputs. There are no peripheral components required other than these decoupling capacitors and 18  $\Omega/56~\Omega$  termination resistors, one set per connected input signal (see also application example in Fig.47). Four anti-alias filters are integrated.

Clamp and gain control for the four ADCs are also integrated. An analog video output (pin AOUT) is provided for testing purposes.

### 9.1 Analog terminals

The SAA7118 has 16 analog inputs Al41 to Al44, Al31 to Al34, Al21 to Al24 and Al11 to Al14 for composite video CVBS or S-video Y/C signal pairs or component video input signals RGB plus separate sync (or Y-P<sub>B</sub>-P<sub>R</sub> plus separate sync).

Table 24 Analog pin description

| SYMBOL                       | <b>PIN</b> <sup>(1)</sup>             | I/O | DESCRIPTION   | BIT            |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----|---|----------------|
| Al11 to Al14                 | J2, K1, K2 and L3 (27, 29, 31 and 34) | I   | analog video signal inputs, e.g. 16 CVBS signals or eight Y/C pairs, or four RGB plus separate sync (or                 | MODE5 to MODE0 |
| Al21 to Al24                 | G4, G3, H2 and J3 (19, 21, 23 and 26) |     | Y-P <sub>B</sub> -P <sub>R</sub> plus separate sync) signal groups can be connected simultaneously to this device; many |                |
| Al31 to Al34                 | E3, F2, F3 and G1 (11, 13, 15 and 18) |     | combinations are possible; see Figs 51 to 91  |                |
| Al41 to Al44                 | B1, D2, D1 and E1<br>(2, 5, 7 and 10) |     |   |                |
| AOUT                         | M1 (36)                               | 0   | analog video output, for test purposes  | AOSL2 to AOSL0 |
| AI1D, AI2D,<br>AI3D and AI4D | K3, H1, F1 and D3 (30, 22, 14 and 6)  | I   | analog reference pins for differential ADC operation; connect to ground via 47 nF                                       | _              |

### Note

1. Pin numbers for QFP160 in parenthesis.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 9.2 Audio clock signals

The SAA7118 also synchronizes the audio clock and sampling rate to the video frame rate, via a very slow PLL. This ensures that the multimedia capture and compression processes always gather the same predefined number of samples per video frame.

An audio master clock AMCLK and two divided clocks ASCLK and ALRCLK are generated;

- · ASCLK: can be used as audio serial clock
- ALRCLK: audio left/right channel clock.

The ratios are programmable; see also Section 8.7.

Table 25 Audio clock pin description

| SYMBOL | PIN <sup>(1)</sup> | I/O | DESCRIPTION   | ВІТ   |
|--------|--------------------|-----|---|---|
| AMCLK  | P11<br>(72)        | 0   | audio master clock output   | ACPF[17:0] 32H[1:0] 31H[7:0] 30H[7:0] and ACNI[21:0] 36H[5:0] 35H[7:0] 34H[7:0] |
| AMXCLK | M12<br>(76)        | I   | external audio master clock input for the clock division circuit, can be directly connected to output AMCLK for standard applications | _   |
| ASCLK  | N11<br>(74)        | 0   | serial audio clock output, can be synchronized to rising or falling edge of AMXCLK  | SDIV[5:0] 38H[5:0] and SCPH[3AH[0]]   |
| ALRCLK | P12<br>(75)        | 0   | audio channel (left/right) clock output, can be synchronized to rising or falling edge of ASCLK                                       | LRDIV[5:0] 39H[5:0] and LRPH[3AH[1]]  |

#### Note

1. Pin numbers for QFP160 in parenthesis.

#### 9.3 Clock and real-time synchronization signals

For the generation of the line-locked video (pixel) clock LLC, and of the frame-locked audio serial bit clock, a crystal accurate frequency reference is required. An oscillator is built-in for fundamental or third harmonic crystals. The supported crystal frequencies are 32.11 or 24.576 MHz (defined during reset by strapping pin ALRCLK).

Alternatively pin XTALI can be driven from an external single-ended oscillator.

The crystal oscillation can be propagated as a clock to other ICs in the system via pin XTOUT.

The Line-Locked Clock (LLC) is the double pixel clock of nominal 27 MHz. It is locked to the selected video input, generating baseband video pixels according to "ITU recommendation 601". In order to support interfacing circuits, a direct pixel clock (LLC2) is also provided.

The pins for line and field timing reference signals are RTCO, RTS1 and RTS0. Various real-time status information can be selected for the RTS pins. The signals are always available (output) and reflect the synchronization operation of the decoder part in the SAA7118. The function of the RTS1 and RTS0 pins can be defined by bits RTSE1[3:0] 12H[7:4] and RTSE0[3:0] 12H[3:0].

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 26 Clock and real-time synchronization signals

| SYMBOL                      | PIN <sup>(1)</sup> | I/O | DESCRIPTION   | BIT                 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|-----|---|---------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Crystal oscillator          |                    |     |   |                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XTALI                       | B4<br>(155)        | I   | input for crystal oscillator or reference clock   | -                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XTALO                       | A3<br>(156)        | 0   | output of crystal oscillator  | _                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XTOUT                       | A2<br>(158)        | 0   | reference (crystal) clock output drive (optional)   | XTOUTE[14H[3]]      |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Real-time signals (RT port) |                    |     |   |                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| LLC                         | P4<br>(46)         | 0   | line-locked clock, nominal 27 MHz, double pixel clock locked to the selected video input signal   | -                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| LLC2                        | N5<br>(48)         | 0   | line-locked pixel clock, nominal 13.5 MHz   | -                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| RTCO                        | L10<br>(71)        | 0   | real-time control output, transfers real-time status information supporting RTC level 3.1 (see document "RTC Functional Description", available on request) | _                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| RTS0                        | M10<br>(69)        | 0   | real-time status information line 0, can be programmed to carry various real-time information (see Table 56)  | RTSE0[3:0] 12H[3:0] |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| RTS1                        | N10<br>(70)        | 0   | real-time status information line 1, can be programmed to carry various real-time information (see Table 57)  | RTSE1[3:0] 12H[7:4] |  |  |  |  |  |  |

#### Note

1. Pin numbers for QFP160 in parenthesis.

#### 9.4 Interrupt handling

### 9.4.1 INTERRUPT FLAGS

The pin INT\_A is an open-drain output (active LOW). All flags can be independently enabled. For the default setting all flags are disabled after reset. For the description of interrupt mask registers see Section 15.4.

### 9.4.1.1 Power state

PRDON: a power fail has been detected during normal operation, the device needs re-programming.

### 9.4.1.2 Video decoder

INTL: interlaced/non-interlaced source detected.

HLCK: horizontal PLL state changed (locked  $\leftrightarrow$  unlocked).

HLVLN: vertical lock state changed (locked ↔ unlocked).

FIDT: detected field frequency has changed

(50 Hz  $\leftrightarrow$  60 Hz).

RDCAP: ready for capture (true  $\leftrightarrow$  false).

DCSTD[1:0]: detected colour standard has changed or colour lost.

COPRO, COLSTR and TYPE3: various levels of copy protection have changed.

### 9.4.1.3 VBI data slicer

VPSV: VPS identification found or lost.

PPV: PALplus identification found or lost.

CCV: Closed caption identification found or lost.

#### 9.4.1.4 Scaler

ERROF: scaler output formatting error detected.

### 9.4.2 STATUS READING CONDITIONS

The status information read after an interrupt will always be the LATEST state, that means the status will not be 'frozen' when an interrupt is being generated. Therefore, if there is a long time between interrupt generation and status reading, the original trigger condition might have been overridden by the present state.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 9.4.3 ERASING CONDITIONS

The status flags are grouped into four 8-bit registers.

The interrupt flag will only be cleared on a read access to the status register in which the signal is located which caused the interrupt. This implies that it is sufficient to clear the interrupt by reading only those registers which have been enabled by their corresponding masks.

Priority: If a new trigger condition occurs at the SAME time (clock) on which a status is being read, the flag will NOT be cleared.

### 9.5 Video expansion port (X-port)

The expansion port is intended for transporting video streams image data from other digital video circuits such

as MPEG encoder/decoder and video phone codec, to the image port (I-port).

The expansion port consists of two groups of signals/pins:

- 8-bit data, I/O, regularly components video Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub>
   4:2:2, i.e. C<sub>B</sub>-Y-C<sub>R</sub>-Y, byte serial, exceptionally raw video samples (e.g. ADC test). In input mode the data bus can be extended to 16-bit by pins HPD7 to HPD0.
- Clock, synchronization and auxiliary signals, accompanying the data stream, I/O.

As output, these are direct copies of the decoder signals.

The data transfers through the expansion port represent a single D1 port, with half duplex mode. The SAV and EAV codes may be inserted optionally for data input (controlled by bit XCODE[92H[3]]). The input/output direction is switched for complete fields only.

Table 27 Signals dedicated to the expansion port

| SYMBOL          | PIN <sup>(1)</sup>   | I/O | DESCRIPTION   | BIT  |
|-----------------|--|-----|---|--|
| XPD7 to<br>XPD0 | C11, A11, B10, A10,<br>B9, A9, B8 and A8<br>(127, 128, 130, 131,<br>134, 135, 138 and 139) | I/O | X-port data: in output mode controlled by decoder section, data format see Table 28; in input mode Y-C $_B$ -C $_R$ 4 : 2 : 2 serial input data or luminance part of a 16-bit Y-C $_B$ -C $_R$ 4 : 2 : 2 input              | OFTS[2:0]<br>13H[2:0],<br>91H[7:0]<br>and C1H[7:0]                 |
| XCLK            | A7 (143)   | I/O | clock at expansion port: if output, then copy of LLC; as input normally a double pixel clock of up to 32 MHz or a gated clock (clock gated with a qualifier)  | XCKS[92H[0]]   |
| XDQ             | B7 (144)   | I/O | data valid flag of the expansion port input (qualifier): if output, then decoder (HREF and VGATE) gate (see Fig.30)   | _  |
| XRDY            | A6 (146)   | 0   | data request flag = ready to receive, to work with optional buffer in external device, to prevent internal buffer overflow; second function: input related task flag A/B  | XRQT[83H[2]]   |
| XRH             | C7 (141)   | I/O | horizontal reference signal for the X-port:<br>as output: HREF or HS from the decoder (see Fig.30);<br>as input: a reference edge for horizontal input timing and a<br>polarity for input field ID detection can be defined | XRHS[13H[6]],<br>XFDH[92H[6]]<br>and<br>XDH[92H[2]]                |
| XRV             | D8 (140)   | I/O | vertical reference signal for the X-port: as output: V123 or field ID from the decoder, see Figs 28 and 29; as input: a reference edge for vertical input timing and for input field ID detection can be defined            | XRVS[1:0]<br>13H[5:4],<br>XFDV[92H[7]]<br>and XDV[1:0]<br>92H[5:4] |
| XTRI            | B11 (126)  | I   | port control: switches X-port input 3-state   | XPE[1:0]<br>83H[1:0]   |

#### Note

1. Pin numbers for QFP160 in parenthesis.

**SAA7118** 

#### 9.5.1 X-PORT CONFIGURED AS OUTPUT

If data output is enabled at the expansion port, then the data stream from the decoder is presented. The data format of the 8-bit data bus is dependent on the chosen data type, selectable by the line control registers LCR2 to LCR24; see Table 4. In contrast to the image port, the sliced data format is not available on the expansion port. Instead, raw CVBS samples are always transferred if any sliced data type is selected.

Some details of data types on the expansion port are as follows:

- Active video (data type 15): contains component Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> 4: 2: 2 signal, 720 active pixels per line. The amplitude and offsets are programmable via DBRI7 to DBRI0, DCON7 to DCON0, DSAT7 to DSAT0, OFFU1, OFFU0, OFFV1 and OFFV0. For nominal levels see Fig.19.
- Test line (data type 6): is similar to the active video format, with some constraints within the data processing:
  - adaptive chrominance comb filter, vertical filter (chrominance comb filter for NTSC standards, PAL phase error correction) within the chrominance processing are disabled
  - adaptive luminance comb filter, peaking and chrominance trap are bypassed within the luminance processing.

This data type is defined for future enhancements. It could be activated for lines containing standard test signals within the vertical blanking period. Currently the most sources do not contain test lines. For nominal levels see Fig.19.

Raw samples (data types 0 to 5 and 7 to 14): C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> samples are similar to data type 6, but CVBS samples are transferred instead of processed luminance samples within the Y time slots.

The amplitude and offset of the CVBS signal is programmable via RAWG7 to RAWG0 and RAWO7 to RAWO0; see Chapter 15, Tables 63 and 64. For nominal levels see Fig.20.

The relationship of LCR programming to line numbers is described in Section 8.3, see Tables 5 to 8.

The data type selections by LCR are overruled by setting OFTS2 = 1 (subaddress 13H bit 2). This setting is mainly intended for device production test. The VPO-bus carries the upper or lower 8 bits of the two ADCs depending on the OFTS[1:0] 13H[1:0] settings; see Table 58. The output configuration is done via MODE[5:0] 02H[5:0] settings; see Table 40. If a Y/C mode is selected, the expansion port carries the multiplexed output signals of both ADCs, and in CVBS mode the output of only one ADC. No timing reference codes are generated in this mode.

**Remark**: The LSBs (bit 0) of the ADCs are also available on pin RTS0; see Table 56.

The SAV/EAV timing reference codes define the start and end of valid data regions. The ITU-blanking code sequence '- 80 - 10 - 80 - 10 - ...' is transmitted during the horizontal blanking period between EAV and SAV.

The position of the F-bit is constant in accordance with ITU 656; see Tables 30 and 31.

The V-bit can be generated in two different ways (see Tables 30 and 31) controlled via OFTS1 and OFTS0; see Table 58.

The F and V bits change synchronously with the EAV code.

Table 28 Data format on the expansion port

| LAN<br>PER |    | _  |    | EFE | NING<br>REN<br>(HE |     |                  | 720 | PIXEL  | _S Y- | -C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>I</sub> | <sub>R</sub> 4: | 2:: | 2 DATA <sup>(2</sup> | 2)   |    | TIN<br>EFE<br>DDE |    | ICE |    | ANKI<br>ERIO |  |
|------------|----|----|----|-----|--------------------|-----|------------------|-----|--------|-------|---------------------------------|-----------------|-----|----------------------|------|----|-------------------|----|-----|----|--------------|--|
| <br>. 8    | 80 | 10 | FF | 00  | 00                 | SAV | C <sub>B</sub> 0 | Y0  | $C_R0$ | Y1    | C <sub>B</sub> 2                | Y2              |     | C <sub>R</sub> 718   | Y719 | FF | 00                | 00 | EAV | 80 | 10           |  |

### Notes

- 1. The generation of the timing reference codes can be suppressed by setting OFTS[2:0] to '010', see Table 58. In this event the code sequence is replaced by the standard '- 80 10 -' blanking values.
- 2. If raw samples or sliced data are selected by the line control registers (LCR2 to LCR24), the Y samples are replaced by CVBS samples.

**SAA7118** 

Table 29 SAV/EAV format on expansion port XPD7 to XPD0

| BIT 7 | BIT 6<br>(F)           | BIT 5<br>(V)          | BIT 4<br>(H)        | BIT 3<br>(P3)  | BIT 2<br>(P2) | BIT 1<br>(P1) | BIT 0<br>(P0) |
|-------|------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1     | field bit              | vertical blanking bit | format              | I              |               | luation       |               |
|       | 1st field: F = 0       | VBI: V = 1            | H = 0 in SAV format | ı              |               | d (protection |               |
|       | 2nd field: F = 1       | active video: V = 0   | H = 1 in EAV format | bits according |               | to II U       | 656)          |
|       | for vertical timing se |                       |                     |                |               |               |               |

Table 30 525 lines/60 Hz vertical timing

| LINE NUMBER | F (ITH 656) |                           | V                                  |
|-------------|-------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| LINE NUMBER | F (ITU 656) | OFTS[2:0] = 000 (ITU 656) | OFTS[2:0] = 001                    |
| 1 to 3      | 1           | 1                         | according to selected VGATE        |
| 4 to 19     | 0           | 1                         | position type via VSTA and         |
| 20          | 0           | 0                         | VSTO<br>(subaddresses 15H to 17H); |
| 21          | 0           | 0                         | see Tables 60 to 62                |
| 22 to 261   | 0           | 0                         |                                    |
| 262         | 0           | 0                         |                                    |
| 263         | 0           | 0                         |                                    |
| 264 and 265 | 0           | 1                         |                                    |
| 266 to 282  | 1           | 1                         |                                    |
| 283         | 1           | 0                         |                                    |
| 284         | 1           | 0                         |                                    |
| 285 to 524  | 1           | 0                         |                                    |
| 525         | 1           | 0                         |                                    |

Table 31 625 lines/50 Hz vertical timing

| LINE NUMBER | E (ITH 656) |                           | ı                                  |  |  |
|-------------|-------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------|--|--|
| LINE NUMBER | F (ITU 656) | OFTS[2:0] = 000 (ITU 656) | OFTS[1:0] = 10                     |  |  |
| 1 to 22     | 0           | 1                         | according to selected VGATE        |  |  |
| 23          | 0           | 0                         | position type via VSTA and         |  |  |
| 24 to 309   | 0           | 0                         | VSTO<br>(subaddresses 15H to 17H); |  |  |
| 310         | 0           | 0                         | see Tables 60 to 62                |  |  |
| 311 and 312 | 0           | 1                         | 1                                  |  |  |
| 313 to 335  | 1           | 1                         | 1                                  |  |  |
| 336         | 1           | 0                         |                                    |  |  |
| 337 to 622  | 1           | 0                         | 1                                  |  |  |
| 623         | 1           | 0                         |                                    |  |  |
| 624 and 625 | 1           | 1                         | 7                                  |  |  |

**SAA7118** 

#### 9.5.2 X-PORT CONFIGURED AS INPUT

If data input mode is selected at the expansion port, then the scaler can choose its input data stream from the on-chip video decoder, or from the expansion port (controlled by bit SCSRC[1:0] 91H[5:4]). Byte serial Y-C\_B-C\_R 4:2:2, or subsets for other sampling schemes, or raw samples from an external ADC may be input (see also bits FSC[2:0] 91H[2:0]). The input stream must be accompanied by an external clock (XCLK), qualifier XDQ and reference signals XRH and XRV. Instead of the reference signal, embedded SAV and EAV codes according to ITU 656 are also accepted. The protection bits are not evaluated.

XRH and XRV carry the horizontal and vertical synchronization signals for the digital video stream through the expansion port. The field ID of the input video stream is carried in the phase (edge) of XRV and state of XRH, or directly as FS (frame sync, odd/even signal) on the XRV pin (controlled by XFDV[92H[7]], XFDH[92H[6]] and XDV1[92H[5]]).

The trigger events on XRH (rising/falling edge) and XRV (rising/falling/both edges) for the scalers acquisition window are defined by XDV[1:0] 92H[5:4] and XDH[92H[2]]. The signal polarity of the qualifier can also be defined (bit XDQ[92H[1]]). Alternatively to a qualifier, the input clock can be applied to a gated clock (means clock gated with a data qualifier, controlled by bit XCKS[92H[0]]). In this event, all input data will be qualified.

As the VBI data slicer may have different requirements for its input reference signals from X-port XRV, XRH, XDQ, XCLK and XPD7 to XPD0, a second set of parameters is available for defining the meaning of the X-port input signals and polarities for the VBI data slicer input path. These bits are defined in subaddresses 81H and 82H.

### 9.6 Image port (I-port)

The image port transfers data from the scaler as well as from the VBI-data slicer, if selected (maximum 33 MHz). The reference clock is available at the ICLK pin, as an output, or as an input (maximum 33 MHz). As output, ICLK is derived from the line-locked decoder or expansion port input clock. The data stream from the scaler output is normally discontinuous. Therefore valid data during a clock cycle is accompanied by a data qualifying (data valid) flag on pin IDQ. For pin constrained applications the IDQ pin can be programmed to function as a gated clock output (bit ICKS2[80H[2]]).

The data formats at the image port are defined in Dwords of 32 bits (4 bytes), such as the related FIFO structures. However the physical data stream at the image port is only 16-bit or 8-bit wide; in 16-bit mode data pins HPD7 to HPD0 are used for chrominance data. The four bytes of the Dwords are serialized in words or bytes.

Available formats are as follows:

- Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> 4:2:2
- Y-C<sub>B</sub>-C<sub>R</sub> 4:1:1
- Raw samples
- Decoded VBI-data.

For handshake with the receiving VGA controller, or other memory or bus interface circuitry, F, H and V reference signals and programmable FIFO flags are provided. The information is provided on pins IGP0, IGP1, IGPH and IGPV. The functionality on these pins is controlled via subaddresses 84H and 85H.

VBI-data is collected over an entire line in its own FIFO, and transferred as an uninterrupted block of bytes. Decoded VBI-data can be signed by the VBI flag on pin IGP0 or IGP1.

As scaled video data and decoded VBI-data may come from different and asynchronous sources, an arbitration scheme is needed. Normally the VBI-data slicer has priority.

The image port consists of the pins and/or signals, as listed in Table 32.

For pin constrained applications, or interfaces, the relevant timing and data reference signals can also get encoded into the data stream. Therefore the corresponding pins do not need to be connected. The minimum image port configuration requires 9 pins only, i.e. 8 pins for data including codes, and 1 pin for clock or gated clock. The inserted codes are defined in close relationship to the ITU-R BT.656 (D1) recommendation, where possible.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

The following deviations from "ITU 656 recommendation" are implemented at the SAA7118s image port interface:

- SAV and EAV codes are only present in those lines, where data is to be transferred, i.e. active video lines, or VBI raw samples, no codes for empty lines
- There may be more or less than 720 pixels between SAV and EAV
- Data content and the number of clock cycles during horizontal and vertical blanking is undefined, and may not be constant
- Data stream may be interleaved with not-valid data codes, 00H, but SAV and EAV 4-byte codes are not interleaved with not-valid data codes
- There may be an irregular pattern of not-valid data, or IDQ, and as a result, C<sub>B</sub>-Y-C<sub>R</sub>-Y is not in a fixed phase to a regular clock divider
- VBI raw sample streams are enveloped with SAV and EAV, like normal video

- Decoded VBI-data is transported as Ancillary (ANC) data, two modes:
  - direct decoded VBI-data bytes (8-bit) are directly placed in the ANC data field, 00H and FFH codes may appear in data block (violation to ITU-R BT.656)
  - recoded VBI-data bytes (8-bit) directly placed in ANC data field, 00H and FFH codes will be recoded to even parity codes 03H and FCH to suppress invalid ITU-R BT.656 codes.

There are no empty cycles in the ancillary code and its data field. The data codes 00H and FFH are suppressed (changed to 01H or FEH respectively) in the active video stream, as well as in the VBI raw sample stream (VBI pass-through). Optionally, the number range can be further limited.

Table 32 Signals dedicated to the image port

| SYMBOL          | PIN <sup>(1)</sup>  | I/O | DESCRIPTION   | BIT  |
|-----------------|---|-----|---|--|
| IPD7 to<br>IPD0 | K11, J13, J14,<br>H13, H14, H11,<br>G12 and G14<br>(92 to 94, 97 to<br>100 and 102) | I/O | I-port data   | ICODE[93H[7]], ISWP[1:0]<br>85H[7:6] and IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0]               |
| ICLK            | M14 (84)  | I/O | continuous reference clock at image port, can<br>be input or output, as output decoder LLC or<br>XCLK from X-port                           | ICKS[1:0] 80H[1:0] and IPE[1:0]<br>87H[1:0]                              |
| IDQ             | L13 (85)  | 0   | data valid flag at image port, qualifier, with programmable polarity; secondary function: gated clock                                       | ICKS2[80H[2]], IDQP[85H[0]] and IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0]                        |
| IGPH            | K12 (91)  | 0   | horizontal reference output signal, copy of the H-gate signal of the scaler, with programmable polarity; alternative function: HRESET pulse | IDH[1:0] 84H[1:0], IRHP[85H[1]]<br>and IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0]                 |
| IGPV            | K14 (90)  | 0   | vertical reference output signal, copy of the V-gate signal of the scaler, with programmable polarity; alternative function: VRESET pulse   | IDV[1:0] 84H[3:2], IRVP[85H[2]]<br>and IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0]                 |
| IGP1            | K13 (89)  | 0   | general purpose output signal for I-port  | IDG12[86H[4]], IDG1[1:0] 84H[5:4],<br>IG1P[85H[3]] and IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0] |
| IGP0            | L14 (87)  | 0   | general purpose output signal for I-port  | IDG02[86H[5]], IDG0[1:0] 84H[7:6],<br>IG0P[85H[4]] and IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0] |
| ITRDY           | N12 (77)  | Ι   | target ready input signals  | _  |
| ITRI            | L12 (86)  | Ι   | port control, switches I-port into 3-state  | IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0]  |

76

### Note

1. Pin numbers for QFP160 in parenthesis.

2001 May 30

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 9.7 Host port for 16-bit extension of video data I/O (H-port)

The H-port pins HPD can be used for extension of the data I/O paths to 16-bit.

The I-port has functional priority. If I8\_16[93H[6]] is set to logic 1 the output drivers of the H-port are enabled depending on the I-port enable control. For I8\_16 = 0, the HPD output is disabled.

Table 33 Signals dedicated to the host port

| SYMBOL       | PIN <sup>(1)</sup>   | I/O | DESCRIPTION | BIT  |
|--------------|--|-----|-------------|--|
| HPD7 to HPD0 | G13, F14, F13, E14, E12,<br>E13, E11 and D14 (103,<br>105, 107 and 109 to 113) | I/O | 1           | IPE[1:0] 87H[1:0], ITRI[8FH[6]]<br>and I8_16[93H[6]] |

#### Note

1. Pin numbers for QFP160 in parenthesis.

### 9.8 Basic input and output timing diagrams I-port and X-port

#### 9.8.1 I-PORT OUTPUT TIMING

The following diagrams illustrate the output timing via the I-port. IGPH and IGPV are logic 1 active gate signals. If reference pulses are programmed, these pulses are generated on the rising edge of the logic 1 active gates. Valid data is accompanied by the output data qualifier on pin IDQ. In addition invalid cycles are marked with output code 00H.

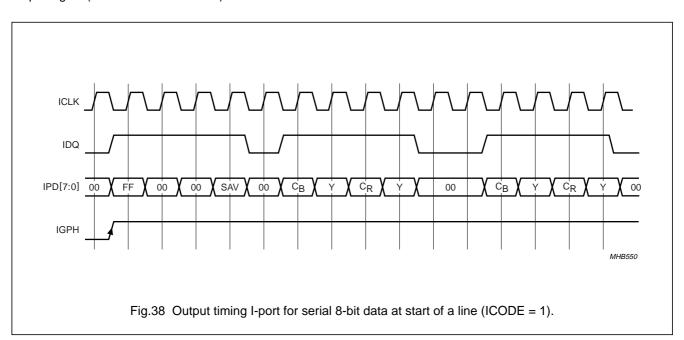
The IDQ output pin may be defined to be a gated clock output signal (ICLK AND internal IDQ).

#### 9.8.2 X-PORT INPUT TIMING

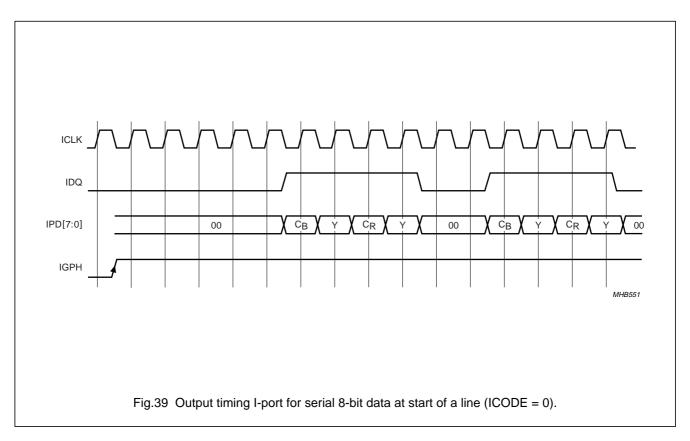
At the X-port the input timing requirements are the same as those for the I-port output. But different to those below:

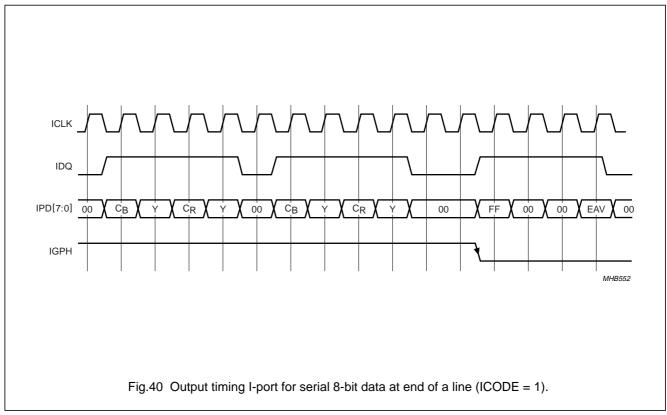
- It is not necessary to mark invalid cycles with a 00H code
- No constraints on the input qualifier (can be a random pattern)
- XCLK may be a gated clock (XCLK AND external XDQ).

**Remark**: All timings illustrated in Figs 38 to 44 are given for an uninterrupted output stream (no handshake with the external hardware).

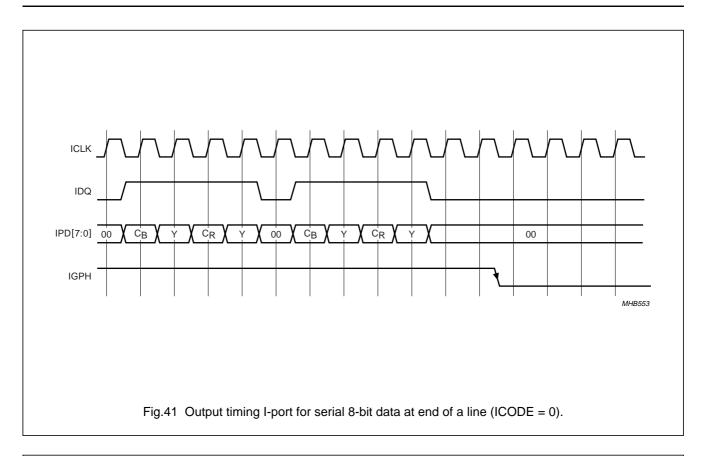


**SAA7118** 





**SAA7118** 



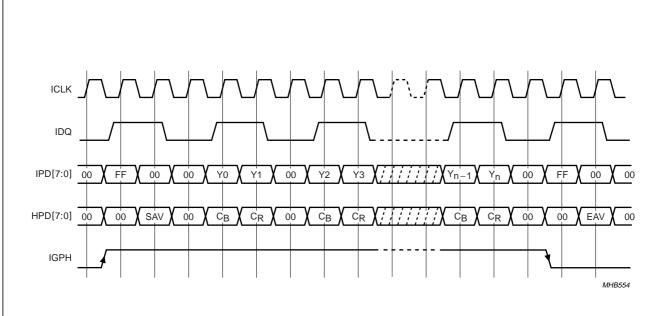
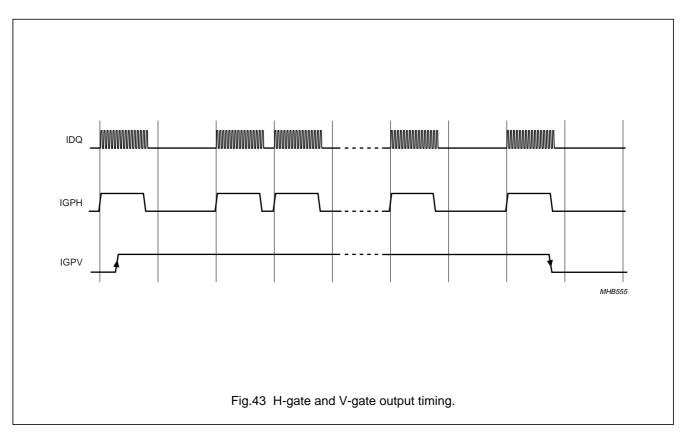
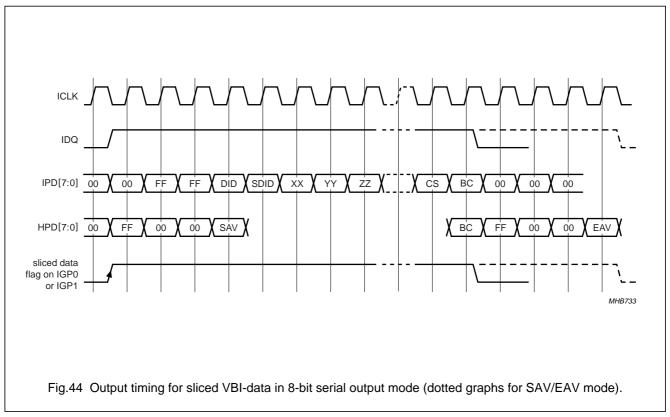


Fig.42 Output timing for 16-bit data output via I-port and H-port with codes (ICODE = 1), timing is like 8-bit output, but packages of 2 bytes per valid cycle.

**SAA7118** 





### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 10 BOUNDARY SCAN TEST

The SAA7118 has built-in logic and 5 dedicated pins to support boundary scan testing which allows board testing without special hardware (nails). The SAA7118 follows the "IEEE Std. 1149.1 - Standard Test Access Port and Boundary-Scan Architecture" set by the Joint Test Action Group (JTAG) chaired by Philips.

The 5 special pins are Test Mode Select (TMS), Test Clock (TCK), Test Reset (TRST), Test Data Input (TDI) and Test Data Output (TDO).

The Boundary Scan Test (BST) functions BYPASS, EXTEST, INTEST, SAMPLE, CLAMP and IDCODE are all supported (see Table 34). Details about the JTAG BST-TEST can be found in specification "*IEEE Std.* 1149.1". A file containing the detailed Boundary Scan Description Language (BSDL) description of the SAA7118 is available on request.

Table 34 BST instructions supported by the SAA7118

| INSTRUCTION | DESCRIPTION  |
|-------------|--|
| BYPASS      | This mandatory instruction provides a minimum length serial path (1 bit) between TDI and TDO when no test operation of the component is required.  |
| EXTEST      | This mandatory instruction allows testing of off-chip circuitry and board level interconnections.  |
| SAMPLE      | This mandatory instruction can be used to take a sample of the inputs during normal operation of the component. It can also be used to preload data values into the latched outputs of the boundary scan register. |
| CLAMP       | This optional instruction is useful for testing when not all ICs have BST. This instruction addresses the bypass register while the boundary scan register is in external test mode.                               |

| INSTRUCTION | DESCRIPTION  |
|-------------|--|
| IDCODE      | This optional instruction will provide information on the components manufacturer, part number and version number. |
| INTEST      | This optional instruction allows testing of the internal logic (no customer support available).                    |
| USER1       | This private instruction allows testing by the manufacturer (no customer support available).                       |

#### 10.1 Initialization of boundary scan circuit

The TAP (Test Access Port) controller of an IC should be in the reset state (TEST\_LOGIC\_RESET) when the IC is in functional mode. This reset state also forces the instruction register into a functional instruction such as IDCODE or BYPASS.

To solve the power-up reset, the standard specifies that the TAP controller will be forced asynchronously to the TEST\_LOGIC\_RESET state by setting the TRST pin LOW.

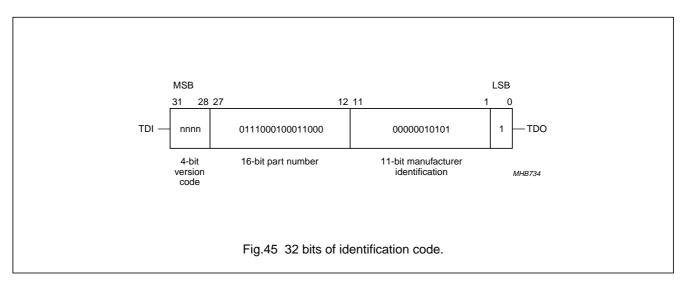
#### 10.2 Device identification codes

A device identification register is specified in "IEEE Std. 1149.1b-1994". It is a 32-bit register which contains fields for the specification of the IC manufacturer, the IC part number and the IC version number. Its biggest advantage is the possibility to check for the correct ICs mounted after production and determination of the version number of ICs during field service.

When the IDCODE instruction is loaded into the BST instruction register, the identification register will be connected between TDI and TDO of the IC. The identification register will load a component specific code during the CAPTURE\_DATA\_REGISTER state of the TAP controller and this code can subsequently be shifted out. At board level this code can be used to verify component manufacturer, type and version number. The device identification register contains 32 bits, numbered 31 to 0, where bit 31 is the most significant bit (nearest to TDI) and bit 0 is the least significant bit (nearest to TDO); see Fig.45.

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 



#### 11 LIMITING VALUES

In accordance with the Absolute Maximum Rating System (IEC 60134); all ground pins connected together and all supply pins connected together.

| SYMBOL           | PARAMETER  | CONDITIONS                    | MIN.  | MAX.                   | UNIT |
|------------------|--|-------------------------------|-------|------------------------|------|
| $V_{DDD}$        | digital supply voltage   |                               | -0.5  | +4.6                   | V    |
| $V_{DDA}$        | analog supply voltage  |                               | -0.5  | +4.6                   | V    |
| V <sub>IA</sub>  | input voltage at analog inputs                                     |                               | -0.5  | $V_{DDA} + 0.5^{(1)}$  | V    |
| V <sub>OA</sub>  | output voltage at analog output                                    |                               | -0.5  | V <sub>DDA</sub> + 0.5 | V    |
| V <sub>ID</sub>  | input voltage at digital inputs and outputs                        | outputs in 3-state;<br>note 2 | -0.5  | +5.5                   | V    |
| V <sub>OD</sub>  | output voltage at digital outputs                                  | outputs active                | -0.5  | V <sub>DDD</sub> + 0.5 | V    |
| $\Delta V_{SS}$  | voltage difference between V <sub>SSAn</sub> and V <sub>SSDn</sub> |                               | _     | 100                    | mV   |
| T <sub>stg</sub> | storage temperature  |                               | -65   | +150                   | °C   |
| T <sub>amb</sub> | ambient temperature  |                               | 0     | 70                     | °C   |
| V <sub>esd</sub> | electrostatic discharge voltage at all pins                        | note 3                        | -2000 | +2000                  | V    |

#### **Notes**

- 1. Maximum 4.6 V.
- 2. Except pin XTALI.
- 3. Human body model: equivalent to discharging a 100 pF capacitor through a 1.5  $k\Omega$  resistor.

#### 12 THERMAL CHARACTERISTICS

| SYMBOL               | PARAMETER                                   | CONDITIONS  | VALUE | UNIT |
|----------------------|---|-------------|-------|------|
| R <sub>th(j-a)</sub> | thermal resistance from junction to ambient | in free air |       |      |
|                      | SAA7118E                                    |             | 37.5  | K/W  |
|                      | SAA7118H                                    |             | 34.3  | K/W  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 13 CHARACTERISTICS

 $V_{DDD}$  = 3.0 to 3.6 V;  $V_{DDA}$  = 3.1 to 3.5 V;  $T_{amb}$  = 25 °C; timings and levels refer to drawings and conditions illustrated in Fig.46; unless otherwise specified.

| SYMBOL                    | PARAMETER   | CONDITIONS  | MIN.   | TYP.               | MAX.           | UNIT           |
|---------------------------|---|---|--------|--------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Supplies                  |   |   |        | •                  | •              | •              |
| $V_{DDD}$                 | digital supply voltage  |   | 3.0    | 3.3                | 3.6            | V              |
| I <sub>DDD</sub>          | digital supply current  | X-port 3-state; 8-bit I-port  | _      | 85                 | _              | mA             |
| P <sub>D</sub>            | power dissipation digital part  |   | _      | 280                | _              | mW             |
| $V_{DDA}$                 | analog supply voltage   |   | 3.1    | 3.3                | 3.5            | V              |
| I <sub>DDA</sub>          | analog supply current   | AOSL1 and AOSL0 = 0  CVBS mode  Y/C mode  component mode  | -<br>- | 75<br>130<br>250   | -              | mA<br>mA<br>mA |
| P <sub>A</sub>            | power dissipation analog part   | CVBS mode Y/C mode component mode   |        | 248<br>430<br>825  | _<br>_<br>_    | mW<br>mW       |
| P <sub>tot(A+D)</sub>     | total power<br>dissipation analog<br>and digital part                       | CVBS mode Y/C mode component mode   | _<br>  | 533<br>710<br>1105 | -<br>-<br>1350 | mW<br>mW       |
| P <sub>tot(A+D)(pd)</sub> | total power<br>dissipation analog<br>and digital part in<br>power-down mode | CE pulled down to ground  | -      | 5                  | -              | mW             |
| P <sub>tot(A+D)(ps)</sub> | total power dissipation analog and digital part in power-save mode          | I <sup>2</sup> C-bus controlled via subaddress<br>88H = 0FH   | -      | 75                 | -              | mW             |
| Analog part               |   |   |        |                    |                |                |
| I <sub>clamp</sub>        | clamping current  | V <sub>I</sub> = 1 V DC   | _      | ±8                 | _              | μΑ             |
| $V_{i(p-p)}$              | input voltage<br>(peak-to-peak<br>value)                                    | for normal video levels 1 V (p-p), $-3$ dB termination 18/56 $\Omega$ and AC coupling required; coupling capacitor is 47 nF | _      | 0.7                | _              | V              |
| Z <sub>i</sub>            | input impedance   | clamping current off  | 200    | _                  | _              | kΩ             |
| Ci                        | input capacitance   |   | _      | _                  | 10             | pF             |
| $\alpha_{\text{CS}}$      | channel crosstalk   | f <sub>i</sub> < 5 MHz  | _      | _                  | -50            | dB             |

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

SAA7118

| SYMBOL                   | PARAMETER                                       | CONDITIONS  | MIN.                    | TYP. | MAX.                       | UNIT |
|--------------------------|---|---|-------------------------|------|----------------------------|------|
| 9-bit analog-            | to-digital converters                           | 5   | 1                       | .!   | •                          |      |
| В                        | analog bandwidth                                | at -3 dB  | _                       | 7    | _                          | MHz  |
| фdiff                    | differential phase                              | amplifier plus anti-alias filter bypassed   | _                       | 2    | _                          | deg  |
| G <sub>diff</sub>        | differential gain                               | amplifier plus anti-alias filter bypassed   | _                       | 2    | _                          | %    |
| f <sub>clk(ADC)</sub>    | ADC clock frequency                             |   | 25.4                    | _    | 28.6                       | MHz  |
| LE <sub>dc(d)</sub>      | DC differential linearity error                 |   | _                       | 0.7  | _                          | LSB  |
| LE <sub>dc(i)</sub>      | DC integral linearity error                     |   | _                       | 1    | _                          | LSB  |
| $\Delta G_{ADC}$         | ADC gain inequality                             | $\left(\frac{\text{maximum deviation}}{\text{minimum deviation}} - 1\right) \times 100;$ note 1 | _                       | 3    | _                          | %    |
| Digital input            | s   |   | 1                       |      | 1                          |      |
| V <sub>IL(SCL,SDA)</sub> | LOW-level input<br>voltage pins SDA<br>and SCL  | note 2  | -0.5                    | _    | +0.3V <sub>DD(I2C)</sub>   | V    |
| V <sub>IH(SCL,SDA)</sub> | HIGH-level input<br>voltage pins SDA<br>and SCL | note 2  | 0.7V <sub>DD(I2C)</sub> | _    | V <sub>DD(I2C)</sub> + 0.5 | V    |
| V <sub>IL(XTALI)</sub>   | LOW-level CMOS input voltage pin XTALI          |   | -0.3                    | _    | +0.8                       | V    |
| V <sub>IH(XTALI)</sub>   | HIGH-level CMOS input voltage pin XTALI         |   | 2.0                     | _    | V <sub>DDD</sub> + 0.3     | V    |
| $V_{IL(n)}$              | LOW-level input voltage all other inputs        |   | -0.3                    | _    | +0.8                       | V    |
| V <sub>IH(n)</sub>       | HIGH-level input voltage all other inputs       |   | 2.0                     | _    | 5.5                        | V    |
| ILI                      | input leakage<br>current                        |   | _                       | _    | 1                          | μΑ   |
| I <sub>LI/O</sub>        | I/O leakage<br>current                          |   | -                       | _    | 10                         | μА   |
| Ci                       | input capacitance                               | I/O at high-impedance   | _                       | _    | 8                          | pF   |

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

SAA7118

| SYMBOL                      | PARAMETER  | CONDITIONS                                | MIN. | TYP.    | MAX.                   | UNIT |
|-----------------------------|--|---|------|---------|------------------------|------|
| Digital outpo               | uts; note 3  |   |      |         | •                      | -1   |
| V <sub>OL(SDA)</sub>        | LOW-level output voltage pin SDA                             | SDA at 3 mA sink current                  | -    | -       | 0.4                    | V    |
| V <sub>OL(clk)</sub>        | LOW-level output voltage for clocks                          |   | -0.5 | -       | +0.6                   | V    |
| V <sub>OH(clk)</sub>        | HIGH-level output voltage for clocks                         |   | 2.4  | _       | V <sub>DDD</sub> + 0.5 | V    |
| V <sub>OL(n)</sub>          | LOW-level output voltage all other digital outputs           |   | 0    | _       | 0.4                    | V    |
| V <sub>OH(n)</sub>          | HIGH-level output voltage all other digital outputs          |   | 2.4  | _       | V <sub>DDD</sub> + 0.5 | V    |
| Clock outpu                 | t timing (LLC and Ll   | <b>_C2)</b> ; note 4                      | !    | !       | !                      |      |
| C <sub>L</sub>              | output load capacitance                                      |   | 15   | _       | 50                     | pF   |
| T <sub>cy</sub>             | cycle time   | pin LLC                                   | 35   | _       | 39                     | ns   |
|                             |  | pin LLC2                                  | 70   | _       | 78                     | ns   |
| δ                           | duty factors for $t_{LLCH}/t_{LLC}$ and $t_{LLC2H}/t_{LLC2}$ | C <sub>L</sub> = 40 pF                    | 40   | _       | 60                     | %    |
| t <sub>r</sub>              | rise time LLC and LLC2                                       | 0.2 V to V <sub>DDD</sub> – 0.2 V         | _    | _       | 5                      | ns   |
| t <sub>f</sub>              | fall time LLC and LLC2                                       | V <sub>DDD</sub> – 0.2 V to 0.2 V         | _    | _       | 5                      | ns   |
| t <sub>d(LLC-LLC2)</sub>    | delay time<br>between LLC and<br>LLC2 output                 | measured at 1.5 V; C <sub>L</sub> = 25 pF | -4   | _       | +8                     | ns   |
| Horizontal P                | PLL  |   |      |         |                        | •    |
| f <sub>hor(n)</sub>         | nominal line   | 50 Hz field                               | _    | 15625   | _                      | Hz   |
|                             | frequency  | 60 Hz field                               | _    | 15734   | _                      | Hz   |
| $\Delta f_{hor}/f_{hor(n)}$ | permissible static deviation                                 |   | _    | _       | 5.7                    | %    |
| Subcarrier F                | PLL  |   |      |         |                        |      |
| f <sub>sc(n)</sub>          | nominal subcarrier   | PAL BGHI                                  | _    | 4433619 | _                      | Hz   |
|                             | frequency  | NTSC M                                    | _    | 3579545 | _                      | Hz   |
|                             |  | PAL M                                     | _    | 3575612 | _                      | Hz   |
|                             |  | PAL N                                     | _    | 3582056 | _                      | Hz   |
| $\Delta f_{SC}$             | lock-in range  |   | ±400 | _       | _                      | Hz   |

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

SAA7118

| SYMBOL                        | PARAMETER   | CONDITIONS   | MIN. | TYP.     | MAX.                   | UNIT |
|-------------------------------|---|--------------|------|----------|------------------------|------|
| Crystal osci                  | llator for 32.11 MHz;   | note 5       |      | <u>'</u> |                        | · ·  |
| f <sub>xtal(nom)</sub>        | nominal frequency   | 3rd harmonic | _    | 32.11    | _                      | MHz  |
| $\Delta f_{\text{xtal(nom)}}$ | permissible<br>nominal frequency<br>deviation                     |              | _    | _        | ±70 × 10 <sup>-6</sup> |      |
| $\Delta f_{xtal(nom)(T)}$     | permissible<br>nominal frequency<br>deviation with<br>temperature |              | -    | _        | ±30 × 10 <sup>-6</sup> |      |
| CRYSTAL SPEC                  | CIFICATION (X1)   |              |      |          |                        |      |
| T <sub>amb(X1)</sub>          | ambient<br>temperature  |              | 0    | _        | 70                     | °C   |
| C <sub>L</sub>                | load capacitance  |              | 8    | _        | _                      | pF   |
| $R_s$                         | series resonance resistor   |              | _    | 40       | 80                     | Ω    |
| C <sub>1</sub>                | motional capacitance  |              | _    | 1.5 ±20% | _                      | fF   |
| C <sub>0</sub>                | parallel capacitance  |              | -    | 4.3 ±20% | _                      | pF   |
| Crystal osci                  | llator for 24.576 MHz   | ; note 5     |      | •        | ,                      | '    |
| f <sub>xtal(n)</sub>          | nominal frequency   | 3rd harmonic | -    | 24.576   | _                      | MHz  |
| $\Delta f_{xtal(n)}$          | permissible<br>nominal frequency<br>deviation                     |              | _    | _        | ±50 × 10 <sup>-6</sup> |      |
| $\Delta f_{xtal(n)(T)}$       | permissible<br>nominal frequency<br>deviation with<br>temperature |              | -    | -        | ±20 × 10 <sup>-6</sup> |      |
| CRYSTAL SPEC                  | CIFICATION (X1)   |              |      |          | •                      | •    |
| T <sub>amb(X1)</sub>          | ambient<br>temperature  |              | 0    | _        | 70                     | °C   |
| C <sub>L</sub>                | load capacitance  |              | 8    | _        | _                      | pF   |
| R <sub>s</sub>                | series resonance resistor   |              | -    | 40       | 80                     | Ω    |
| C <sub>1</sub>                | motional capacitance  |              | -    | 1.5 ±20% | _                      | fF   |
| C <sub>0</sub>                | parallel capacitance  |              | -    | 3.5 ±20% | _                      | pF   |

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

SAA7118

| SYMBOL               | PARAMETER   | CONDITIONS                     | MIN.            | TYP.       | MAX.             | UNIT      |
|----------------------|---|--------------------------------|-----------------|------------|------------------|-----------|
| Clock input          | timing (XCLK)   |                                | <u>'</u>        | <u>'</u>   | •                | !         |
| T <sub>cy</sub>      | cycle time  |                                | 31              | _          | 45               | ns        |
| δ                    | duty factors for t <sub>LLCH</sub> /t <sub>LLC</sub>      |                                | 40              | 50         | 60               | %         |
| t <sub>r</sub>       | rise time   |                                | _               | _          | 5                | ns        |
| t <sub>f</sub>       | fall time   |                                | _               | _          | 5                | ns        |
| Data and co          | ntrol signal input tin                                    | ning X-port, related to XCLK i | nput            |            |                  |           |
| t <sub>SU;DAT</sub>  | input data set-up time                                    |                                | _               | 10         | _                | ns        |
| t <sub>HD;DAT</sub>  | input data hold time                                      |                                | -               | 3          | _                | ns        |
| Clock outpu          | t timing  |                                | <b>!</b>        | ·          | ·                |           |
| C <sub>L</sub>       | output load capacitance                                   |                                | 15              | _          | 50               | pF        |
| T <sub>cy</sub>      | cycle time  |                                | 35              | _          | 39               | ns        |
| δ                    | duty factors for t <sub>XCLKH</sub> /t <sub>XCLKL</sub>   |                                | 35              | _          | 65               | %         |
| t <sub>r</sub>       | rise time   | 0.6 to 2.6 V                   | _               | _          | 5                | ns        |
| t <sub>f</sub>       | fall time   | 2.6 to 0.6 V                   | _               | _          | 5                | ns        |
| Data and connote 4   | ntrol signal output ti                                    | ming X-port, related to XCLK   | Coutput (for XP | CK[1:0]83H | H[5:4] = 00 is o | default); |
| C <sub>L</sub>       | output load capacitance                                   |                                | 15              | _          | 50               | pF        |
| t <sub>OHD;DAT</sub> | output data hold time                                     | C <sub>L</sub> = 15 pF         | -               | 14         | _                | ns        |
| t <sub>PD</sub>      | propagation delay<br>from positive edge<br>of XCLK output | C <sub>L</sub> = 15 pF         | _               | 24         | _                | ns        |
| Control sign         | al output timing RT                                       | port, related to LLC output    |                 |            | •                |           |
| C <sub>L</sub>       | output load capacitance                                   |                                | 15              | _          | 50               | pF        |
| t <sub>OHD;DAT</sub> | output hold time  | C <sub>L</sub> = 15 pF         | _               | 14         | _                | ns        |
| t <sub>PD</sub>      | propagation delay<br>from positive edge<br>of LLC output  | C <sub>L</sub> = 15 pF         | -               | 24         | _                | ns        |
|                      | <u> </u>  | l .                            | I               |            |                  |           |

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

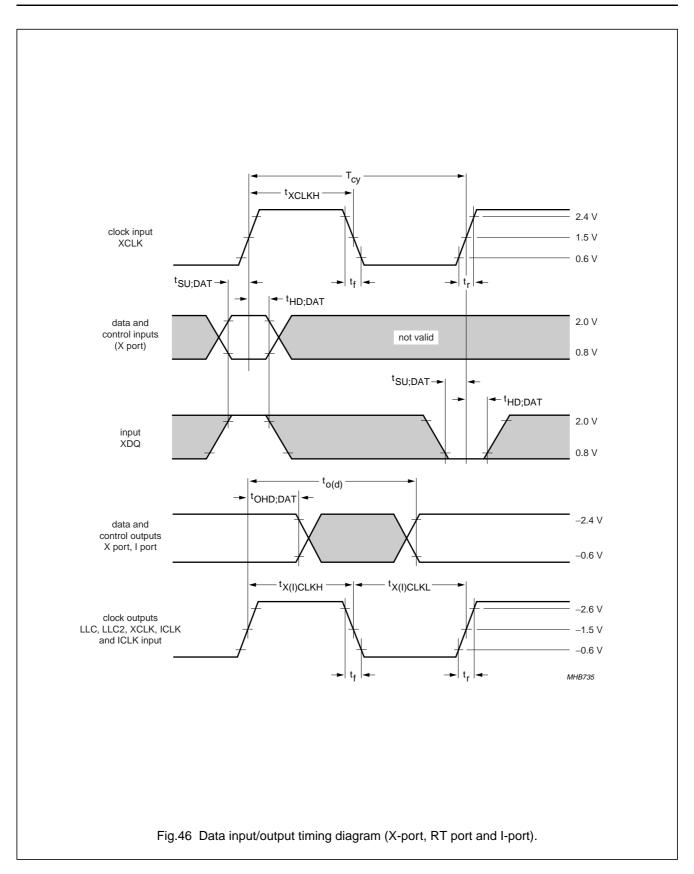
**SAA7118** 

| PARAMETER   | CONDITIONS   | MIN.  | TYP.  | MAX.   | UNIT   |
|---|--|---|---|--|--|
| iming   |  | •   | '   | •  | •  |
| output load capacitance                                 |  | 15  | _   | 50   | pF   |
| cycle time  |  | 31  | _   | 45   | ns   |
| duty factors for t <sub>ICLKH</sub> /t <sub>ICLKL</sub> |  | 35  | _   | 65   | %  |
| rise time   | 0.6 to 2.6 V   | _   | _   | 5  | ns   |
| fall time   | 2.6 to 0.6 V   | _   | _   | 5  | ns   |
| trol signal output ti                                   | ming I-port, related to ICLK outp  | ut (for IPCK  | 1:0] 87H[5  | :4] = 00 is defa   | ult)   |
| output load<br>capacitance at all<br>outputs            |  | 15  | _   | 50   | pF   |
| output data hold time                                   | C <sub>L</sub> = 15 pF   | _   | 12  | _  | ns   |
| output delay time                                       | C <sub>L</sub> = 15 pF   | _   | 22  | _  | ns   |
| ning  | •  | •   | •   | •  |  |
| cycle time  |  | 31  | _   | 100  | ns   |
|   | output load capacitance cycle time duty factors for tICLKH/TICLKL rise time fall time trol signal output ti output load capacitance at all outputs output data hold time output delay time | iming  output load capacitance  cycle time  duty factors for $t_{ICLKH}/t_{ICLKL}$ rise time  0.6 to 2.6 V  fall time  2.6 to 0.6 V  trol signal output timing I-port, related to ICLK outp  output load capacitance at all outputs  output data hold time  output delay time $C_L = 15 \text{ pF}$ | output load capacitance  cycle time 31  duty factors for t <sub>ICLKH</sub> /t <sub>ICLKL</sub> rise time 0.6 to 2.6 V -  fall time 2.6 to 0.6 V -  trol signal output timing I-port, related to ICLK output (for IPCK)  output load capacitance at all outputs  output data hold time C <sub>L</sub> = 15 pF -  ming | iming output load capacitance $ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | output load capacitance $ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ |

### **Notes**

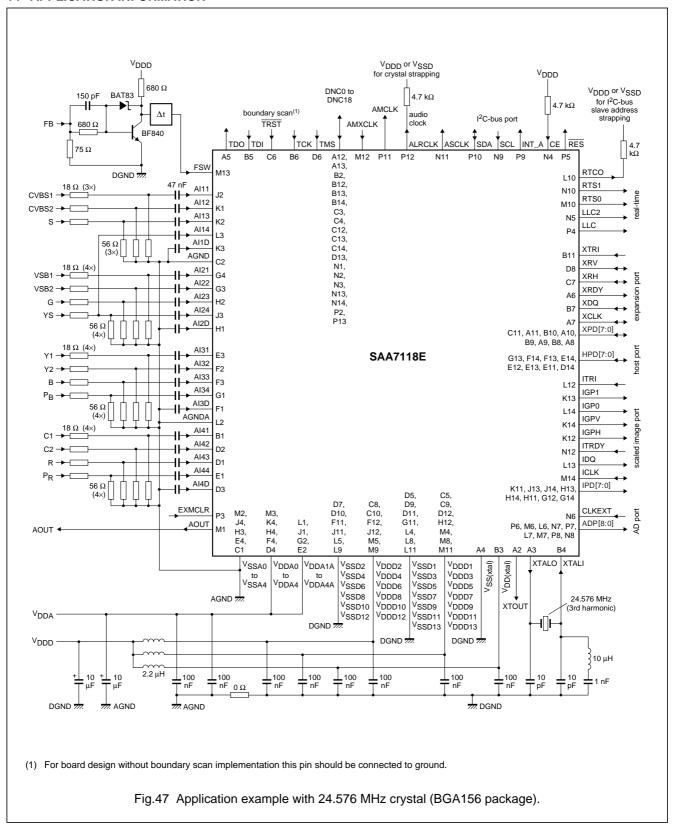
- 1. ADC1 is not taken into account, since component video is always converted by ADC2, ADC3 and ADC4.
- 2.  $V_{DD(I2C)}$  is the supply voltage of the I<sup>2</sup>C-bus. For  $V_{DD(I2C)} = 3.3$  V is  $V_{IL(SCL,SDA)(max)} = 1$  V; for  $V_{DD(I2C)} = 5$  V is  $V_{IL(SCL,SDA)(max)} = 1.5$  V. For  $V_{DD(I2C)} = 3.3$  V is  $V_{IH(SCL,SDA)(min)} = 2.3$  V; for  $V_{DD(I2C)} = 5$  V is  $V_{IH(SCL,SDA)(min)} = 3.5$  V.
- 3. The levels must be measured with load circuits; 1.2 k $\Omega$  at 3 V (TTL load);  $C_L$  = 50 pF.
- 4. The effects of rise and fall times are included in the calculation of t<sub>OHD;DAT</sub> and t<sub>PD</sub>. Timings and levels refer to drawings and conditions illustrated in Fig.46.
- 5. The crystal oscillator drive level is typical 0.28 mW.

**SAA7118** 

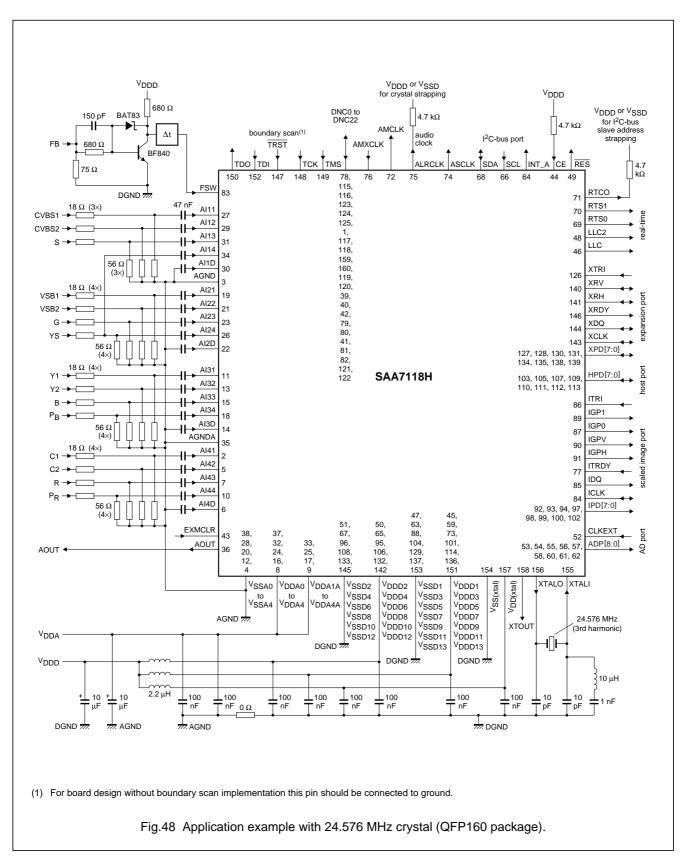


**SAA7118** 

#### 14 APPLICATION INFORMATION



**SAA7118** 

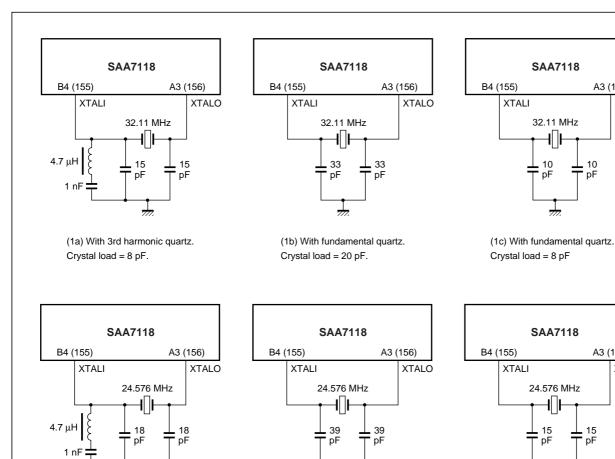


### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

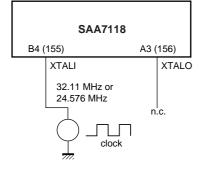
XTALO

XTALO



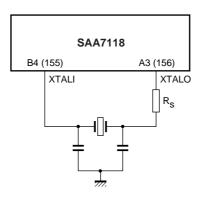
(2a) With 3rd harmonic quartz. Crystal load = 8 pF. (2b) With fundamental quartz. Crystal load = 20 pF.

(2c) With fundamental quartz. Crystal load = 8 pF.



(3a) With direct clock.

Pin numbers for QFP160 in parenthesis.



(3b) With fundamental quartz and restricted drive level. When  $P_{\text{drive}}$  of the internal oscillator is too high a resistance  $R_s$  can be placed in series with the output of the oscillator XTALO. Note: The decreased crystal amplitude results in a lower drive level but on the other hand the jitter performance will decrease.

Fig.49 Oscillator application.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 15 I2C-BUS DESCRIPTION

The SAA7118 supports the 'fast mode' I<sup>2</sup>C-bus specification extension (data rate up to 400 kbits/s).

### 15.1 I2C-bus format

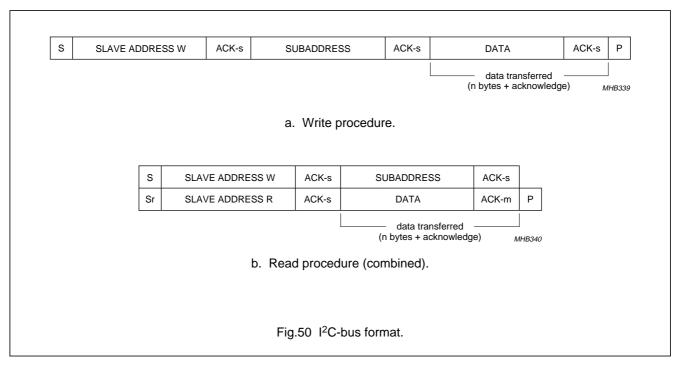


Table 35 Description of I<sup>2</sup>C-bus format

| CODE            | DESCRIPTION  |
|-----------------|--|
| S               | START condition  |
| Sr              | repeated START condition   |
| SLAVE ADDRESS W | '0100 0010' (42H, default) or '0100 0000' (40H; note 1)  |
| SLAVE ADDRESS R | '0100 0011' (43H, default) or '0100 0001' (41H; note 1)  |
| ACK-s           | acknowledge generated by the slave   |
| ACK-m           | acknowledge generated by the master  |
| SUBADDRESS      | subaddress byte; see Tables 36 and 37  |
| DATA            | data byte; see Table 37; if more than one byte DATA is transmitted the subaddress pointer is automatically incremented   |
| Р               | STOP condition   |
| X               | read/write control bit (LSB slave address); $X = 0$ , order to write (the circuit is slave receiver); $X = 1$ , order to read (the circuit is slave transmitter) |

### Note

1. If pin RTCO strapped to supply voltage via a 3.3  $k\Omega$  resistor.

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 36 Subaddress description and access

| SUBADDRESS             | DESCRIPTION                      | ACCESS (READ/WRITE) |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|
| 00H                    | chip version                     | read only           |
| F0H to FFH             | reserved                         | -                   |
| Video decoder: 01H t   | o 2FH                            |                     |
| 01H to 05H             | front-end part                   | read and write      |
| 06H to 19H             | decoder part                     | read and write      |
| 1AH to 1EH             | reserved                         | -                   |
| 1FH                    | video decoder status byte        | read only           |
| 20H to 2FH             | reserved                         | -                   |
| Audio clock generation | on: 30H to 3FH                   |                     |
| 30H to 3AH             | audio clock generator            | read and write      |
| 3BH to 3FH             | reserved                         | -                   |
| General purpose VBI    | -data slicer: 40H to 7FH         |                     |
| 40H to 5EH             | VBI-data slicer                  | read and write      |
| 5FH                    | reserved                         | -                   |
| 60H to 62H             | VBI-data slicer status           | read only           |
| 63H to 7FH             | reserved                         | -                   |
| X-port, I-port and the | scaler: 80H to EFH               |                     |
| 80H to 8FH             | task independent global settings | read and write      |
| 90H to BFH             | task A definition                | read and write      |
| C0H to EFH             | task B definition                | read and write      |

comb filter and component video input

Multistandard video decoder with adaptive

**SAA7118** 

Table 37 I<sup>2</sup>C-bus receiver/transmitter overview

| REGISTER FUNCTION                | SUB<br>ADDR.<br>(HEX) | D7     | D6     | D5     | D4     | D3     | D2     | D1     | D0     |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| Chip version: register 00H       |                       |        |        |        |        | •      |        |        |        |
| Chip version (read only)         | 00                    | ID7    | ID6    | ID5    | ID4    | _      | _      | _      | _      |
| Video decoder: registers 01H to  | o 1FH                 |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
| FRONT-END PART: REGISTERS 01H    | то 05Н                |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
| Increment delay                  | 01                    | (1)    | WPOFF  | GUDL1  | GUDL0  | IDEL3  | IDEL2  | IDEL1  | IDEL0  |
| Analog input control 1           | 02                    | FUSE1  | FUSE0  | MODE5  | MODE4  | MODE3  | MODE2  | MODE1  | MODE0  |
| Analog input control 2           | 03                    | (1)    | HLNRS  | VBSL   | CPOFF  | HOLDG  | GAFIX  | GAI28  | GAI18  |
| Analog input control 3           | 04                    | GAI17  | GAI16  | GAI15  | GAI14  | GAI13  | GAI12  | GAI11  | GAI10  |
| Analog input control 4           | 05                    | GAI27  | GAI26  | GAI25  | GAI24  | GAI23  | GAI22  | GAI21  | GAI20  |
| DECODER PART: REGISTERS 06H T    | o 1FH                 |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
| Horizontal sync start            | 06                    | HSB7   | HSB6   | HSB5   | HSB4   | HSB3   | HSB2   | HSB1   | HSB0   |
| Horizontal sync stop             | 07                    | HSS7   | HSS6   | HSS5   | HSS4   | HSS3   | HSS2   | HSS1   | HSS0   |
| Sync control                     | 08                    | AUFD   | FSEL   | FOET   | HTC1   | HTC0   | HPLL   | VNOI1  | VNOI0  |
| Luminance control                | 09                    | BYPS   | YCOMB  | LDEL   | LUBW   | LUFI3  | LUFI2  | LUFI1  | LUFI0  |
| Luminance brightness control     | 0A                    | DBRI7  | DBRI6  | DBRI5  | DBRI4  | DBRI3  | DBRI2  | DBRI1  | DBRI0  |
| Luminance contrast control       | 0B                    | DCON7  | DCON6  | DCON5  | DCON4  | DCON3  | DCON2  | DCON1  | DCON0  |
| Chrominance saturation control   | 0C                    | DSAT7  | DSAT6  | DSAT5  | DSAT4  | DSAT3  | DSAT2  | DSAT1  | DSAT0  |
| Chrominance hue control          | 0D                    | HUEC7  | HUEC6  | HUEC5  | HUEC4  | HUEC3  | HUEC2  | HUEC1  | HUEC0  |
| Chrominance control 1            | 0E                    | CDTO   | CSTD2  | CSTD1  | CSTD0  | DCVF   | FCTC   | AUTO0  | ССОМВ  |
| Chrominance gain control         | 0F                    | ACGC   | CGAIN6 | CGAIN5 | CGAIN4 | CGAIN3 | CGAIN2 | CGAIN1 | CGAIN0 |
| Chrominance control 2            | 10                    | OFFU1  | OFFU0  | OFFV1  | OFFV0  | CHBW   | LCBW2  | LCBW1  | LCBW0  |
| Mode/delay control               | 11                    | COLO   | RTP1   | HDEL1  | HDEL0  | RTP0   | YDEL2  | YDEL1  | YDEL0  |
| RT signal control                | 12                    | RTSE13 | RTSE12 | RTSE11 | RTSE10 | RTSE03 | RTSE02 | RTSE01 | RTSE00 |
| RT/X-port output control         | 13                    | RTCE   | XRHS   | XRVS1  | XRVS0  | HLSEL  | OFTS2  | OFTS1  | OFTS0  |
| Analog/ADC/compatibility control | 14                    | CM99   | UPTCV  | AOSL1  | AOSL0  | XTOUTE | AUTO1  | APCK1  | APCK0  |
| VGATE start, FID change          | 15                    | VSTA7  | VSTA6  | VSTA5  | VSTA4  | VSTA3  | VSTA2  | VSTA1  | VSTA0  |
| VGATE stop                       | 16                    | VSTO7  | VSTO6  | VSTO5  | VSTO4  | VSTO3  | VSTO2  | VSTO1  | VSTO0  |

| REGISTER FUNCTION                           | SUB<br>ADDR.<br>(HEX) | D7          | D6            | D5     | D4     | D3     | D2      | D1      | D0      |
|---|-----------------------|-------------|---------------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| Miscellaneous, VGATE configuration and MSBs | 17                    | LLCE        | LLC2E         | LATY2  | LATY1  | LATY0  | VGPS    | VSTO8   | VSTA8   |
| Raw data gain control                       | 18                    | RAWG7       | RAWG6         | RAWG5  | RAWG4  | RAWG3  | RAWG2   | RAWG1   | RAWG0   |
| Raw data offset control                     | 19                    | RAW07       | RAWO6         | RAWO5  | RAWO4  | RAWO3  | RAWO2   | RAWO1   | RAWO0   |
| Reserved                                    | 1A to 1D              | (1)         | (1)           | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)     | (1)     | (1)     |
| Status byte 1 video decoder (read only)     | 1E                    | _           | HLCK          | SLTCA  | GLIMT  | GLIMB  | WIPA    | DCSTD1  | DCSTD0  |
| Status byte 2 video decoder (read only)     | 1F                    | INTL        | HLVLN         | FIDT   | _      | TYPE3  | COLSTR  | COPRO   | RDCAP   |
| Component processing and in                 | terrupt ma            | sking part: | registers 20H | to 2FH |        |        | •       |         |         |
| Reserved                                    | 20 to 22              | (1)         | (1)           | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)     | (1)     | (1)     |
| Analog input control 5                      | 23                    | AOSL2       | ADPE          | EXCLK  | REFA   | (1)    | EXMCE   | GAI48   | GAI38   |
| Analog input control 6                      | 24                    | GAI37       | GAI36         | GAI35  | GAI34  | GAI33  | GAI32   | GAI31   | GAI30   |
| Analog input control 7                      | 25                    | GAI47       | GAI46         | GAI45  | GAI44  | GAI43  | GAI42   | GAI41   | GAI40   |
| Reserved                                    | 26 to 28              | (1)         | (1)           | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)     | (1)     | (1)     |
| Component delay                             | 29                    | FSWE        | FSWI          | FSWDL1 | FSWDL0 | CMFI   | CPDL2   | CPDL1   | CPDL0   |
| Component brightness control                | 2A                    | CBRI7       | CBRI6         | CBRI5  | CBRI4  | CBRI3  | CBRI2   | CBRI1   | CBRI0   |
| Component contrast control                  | 2B                    | CCON7       | CCON6         | CCON5  | CCON4  | CCON3  | CCON2   | CCON1   | CCON0   |
| Component saturation control                | 2C                    | CSAT7       | CSAT6         | CSAT5  | CSAT4  | CSAT3  | CSAT2   | CSAT1   | CSAT0   |
| Interrupt mask 1                            | 2D                    | (1)         | (1)           | (1)    | MVPSV  | MPPV   | MCCV    | (1)     | MERROF  |
| Interrupt mask 2                            | 2E                    | (1)         | MHLCK         | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)     | MDCSTD1 | MDCSTD0 |
| Interrupt mask 3                            | 2F                    | MINTL       | MHLVLN        | MFIDT  | (1)    | MTYPE3 | MCOLSTR | MCOPRO  | MRDCAP  |
| Audio clock generator part: re              | gisters 30H           | to 3FH      |               |        |        |        |         |         |         |
| Audio master clock cycles per               | 30                    | ACPF7       | ACPF6         | ACPF5  | ACPF4  | ACPF3  | ACPF2   | ACPF1   | ACPF0   |
| field                                       | 31                    | ACPF15      | ACPF14        | ACPF13 | ACPF12 | ACPF11 | ACPF10  | ACPF9   | ACPF8   |
|   | 32                    | (1)         | (1)           | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)     | ACPF17  | ACPF16  |
| Reserved                                    | 33                    | (1)         | (1)           | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)     | (1)     | (1)     |
| Audio master clock nominal                  | 34                    | ACNI7       | ACNI6         | ACNI5  | ACNI4  | ACNI3  | ACNI2   | ACNI1   | ACNI0   |
| increment                                   | 35                    | ACNI15      | ACNI14        | ACNI13 | ACNI12 | ACNI11 | ACNI10  | ACNI9   | ACNI8   |
|   | 36                    | (1)         | (1)           | ACNI21 | ACNI20 | ACNI19 | ACNI18  | ACNI17  | ACNI16  |

SAA7118

97

**SAA7118** 

Philips Semiconductors

Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

| REGISTER FUNCTION  | SUB<br>ADDR.<br>(HEX) | D7            | D6     | D5     | D4     | D3     | D2     | D1     | D0     |
|--|-----------------------|---------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| Reserved   | 37                    | (1)           | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    |
| Clock ratio AMXCLK to ASCLK                              | 38                    | (1)           | (1)    | SDIV5  | SDIV4  | SDIV3  | SDIV2  | SDIV1  | SDIV0  |
| Clock ratio ASCLK to ALRCLK                              | 39                    | (1)           | (1)    | LRDIV5 | LRDIV4 | LRDIV3 | LRDIV2 | LRDIV1 | LRDIV0 |
| Audio clock generator basic setup                        | 3A                    | (1)           | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | APLL   | AMVR   | LRPH   | SCPH   |
| Reserved   | 3B to 3F              | (1)           | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    |
| General purpose VBI-data slice                           | er part: reg          | gisters 40H t | o 7FH  |        |        |        |        |        |        |
| Slicer control 1   | 40                    | (1)           | HAM_N  | FCE    | HUNT_N | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    |
| LCR2 to LCR24 (n = 2 to 24)                              | 41 to 57              | LCRn_7        | LCRn_6 | LCRn_5 | LCRn_4 | LCRn_3 | LCRn_2 | LCRn_1 | LCRn_0 |
| Programmable framing code                                | 58                    | FC7           | FC6    | FC5    | FC4    | FC3    | FC2    | FC1    | FC0    |
| Horizontal offset for slicer                             | 59                    | HOFF7         | HOFF6  | HOFF5  | HOFF4  | HOFF3  | HOFF2  | HOFF1  | HOFF0  |
| Vertical offset for slicer                               | 5A                    | VOFF7         | VOFF6  | VOFF5  | VOFF4  | VOFF3  | VOFF2  | VOFF1  | VOFF0  |
| Field offset and MSBs for horizontal and vertical offset | 5B                    | FOFF          | RECODE | (1)    | VOFF8  | (1)    | HOFF10 | HOFF9  | HOFF8  |
| Reserved (for testing)                                   | 5C                    | (1)           | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    |
| Header and data identification (DID) code control        | 5D                    | FVREF         | (1)    | DID5   | DID4   | DID3   | DID2   | DID1   | DID0   |
| Sliced data identification (SDID) code                   | 5E                    | (1)           | (1)    | SDID5  | SDID4  | SDID3  | SDID2  | SDID1  | SDID0  |
| Reserved   | 5F                    | (1)           | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    |
| Slicer status byte 0 (read only)                         | 60                    | _             | FC8V   | FC7V   | VPSV   | PPV    | CCV    | _      | _      |
| Slicer status byte 1 (read only)                         | 61                    | _             | _      | F21_N  | LN8    | LN7    | LN6    | LN5    | LN4    |
| Slicer status byte 2 (read only)                         | 62                    | LN3           | LN2    | LN1    | LN0    | DT3    | DT2    | DT1    | DT0    |
| Reserved   | 63 to 7F              | (1)           | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    |
| X-port, I-port and the scaler pa                         | rt: registe           | rs 80H to EF  | Н      |        |        |        |        |        |        |
| TASK INDEPENDENT GLOBAL SETTIF                           | NGS: 80H T            | o 8FH         |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |
| Global control 1   | 80                    | (1)           | SMOD   | TEB    | TEA    | ICKS3  | ICKS2  | ICKS1  | ICKS0  |
| Reserved   | 81 and<br>82          | (1)           | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    |

**SAA7118** 

| REGISTER FUNCTION   | SUB<br>ADDR.<br>(HEX) | D7    | D6    | D5     | D4     | D3    | D2    | D1     | D0     |
|---|-----------------------|-------|-------|--------|--------|-------|-------|--------|--------|
| X-port I/O enable and output clock phase control              | 83                    | (1)   | (1)   | XPCK1  | XPCK0  | (1)   | XRQT  | XPE1   | XPE0   |
| I-port signal definitions                                     | 84                    | IDG01 | IDG00 | IDG11  | IDG10  | IDV1  | IDV0  | IDH1   | IDH0   |
| I-port signal polarities                                      | 85                    | ISWP1 | ISWP0 | ILLV   | IG0P   | IG1P  | IRVP  | IRHP   | IDQP   |
| I-port FIFO flag control and arbitration                      | 86                    | VITX1 | VITX0 | IDG02  | IDG12  | FFL1  | FFL0  | FEL1   | FEL0   |
| I-port I/O enable, output clock and gated clock phase control | 87                    | IPCK3 | IPCK2 | IPCK1  | IPCK0  | (1)   | (1)   | IPE1   | IPE0   |
| Power save/ADC-port control                                   | 88                    | DOSL1 | DOSL0 | SWRST  | DPROG  | SLM3  | (1)   | SLM1   | SLM0   |
| Reserved  | 89 to 8E              | (1)   | (1)   | (1)    | (1)    | (1)   | (1)   | (1)    | (1)    |
| Status information scaler part                                | 8F                    | XTRI  | ITRI  | FFIL   | FFOV   | PRDON | ERROF | FIDSCI | FIDSCO |
| TASK A DEFINITION: REGISTERS 90                               | H то BFH              |       |       |        |        |       |       |        |        |
| Basic settings and acquisition wi                             | ndow defin            | ition |       |        |        |       |       |        |        |
| Task handling control   | 90                    | CONLH | OFIDC | FSKP2  | FSKP1  | FSKP0 | RPTSK | STRC1  | STRC0  |
| X-port formats and configuration                              | 91                    | CONLV | HLDFV | SCSRC1 | SCSRC0 | SCRQE | FSC2  | FSC1   | FSC0   |
| X-port input reference signal definition                      | 92                    | XFDV  | XFDH  | XDV1   | XDV0   | XCODE | XDH   | XDQ    | XCKS   |
| I-port output formats and configuration                       | 93                    | ICODE | I8_16 | FYSK   | FOI1   | FOI0  | FSI2  | FSI1   | FSI0   |
| Horizontal input window start                                 | 94                    | XO7   | XO6   | XO5    | XO4    | XO3   | XO2   | XO1    | XO0    |
|   | 95                    | (1)   | (1)   | (1)    | (1)    | XO11  | XO10  | XO9    | XO8    |
| Horizontal input window length                                | 96                    | XS7   | XS6   | XS5    | XS4    | XS3   | XS2   | XS1    | XS0    |
|   | 97                    | (1)   | (1)   | (1)    | (1)    | XS11  | XS10  | XS9    | XS8    |
| Vertical input window start                                   | 98                    | Y07   | YO6   | YO5    | YO4    | YO3   | YO2   | YO1    | YO0    |
|   | 99                    | (1)   | (1)   | (1)    | (1)    | YO11  | YO10  | YO9    | YO8    |
| Vertical input window length                                  | 9A                    | YS7   | YS6   | YS5    | YS4    | YS3   | YS2   | YS1    | YS0    |
|   | 9B                    | (1)   | (1)   | (1)    | (1)    | YS11  | YS10  | YS9    | YS8    |
| Horizontal output window length                               | 9C                    | XD7   | XD6   | XD5    | XD4    | XD3   | XD2   | XD1    | XD0    |
|   | 9D                    | (1)   | (1)   | (1)    | (1)    | XD11  | XD10  | XD9    | XD8    |
| Vertical output window length                                 | 9E                    | YD7   | YD6   | YD5    | YD4    | YD3   | YD2   | YD1    | YD0    |
|   | 9F                    | (1)   | (1)   | (1)    | (1)    | YD11  | YD10  | YD9    | YD8    |

**SAA7118** 

Philips Semiconductors

Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

| REGISTER FUNCTION                           | SUB<br>ADDR.<br>(HEX) | D7     | D6     | D5     | D4     | D3     | D2     | D1    | D0    |
|---|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| FIR filtering and prescaling                |                       |        |        |        |        |        |        | •     |       |
| Horizontal prescaling                       | A0                    | (1)    | (1)    | XPSC5  | XPSC4  | XPSC3  | XPSC2  | XPSC1 | XPSC0 |
| Accumulation length                         | A1                    | (1)    | (1)    | XACL5  | XACL4  | XACL3  | XACL2  | XACL1 | XACL0 |
| Prescaler DC gain and FIR prefilter control | A2                    | PFUV1  | PFUV0  | PFY1   | PFY0   | XC2_1  | XDCG2  | XDCG1 | XDCG0 |
| Reserved                                    | А3                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)   | (1)   |
| Luminance brightness control                | A4                    | BRIG7  | BRIG6  | BRIG5  | BRIG4  | BRIG3  | BRIG2  | BRIG1 | BRIG0 |
| Luminance contrast control                  | A5                    | CONT7  | CONT6  | CONT5  | CONT4  | CONT3  | CONT2  | CONT1 | CONT0 |
| Chrominance saturation control              | A6                    | SATN7  | SATN6  | SATN5  | SATN4  | SATN3  | SATN2  | SATN1 | SATN0 |
| Reserved                                    | A7                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)   | (1)   |
| Horizontal phase scaling                    |                       |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |
| Horizontal luminance scaling                | A8                    | XSCY7  | XSCY6  | XSCY5  | XSCY4  | XSCY3  | XSCY2  | XSCY1 | XSCY0 |
| increment                                   | A9                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | XSCY12 | XSCY11 | XSCY10 | XSCY9 | XSCY8 |
| Horizontal luminance phase offset           | AA                    | XPHY7  | XPHY6  | XPHY5  | XPHY4  | XPHY3  | XPHY2  | XPHY1 | XPHY0 |
| Reserved                                    | AB                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)   | (1)   |
| Horizontal chrominance scaling              | AC                    | XSCC7  | XSCC6  | XSCC5  | XSCC4  | XSCC3  | XSCC2  | XSCC1 | XSCC0 |
| increment                                   | AD                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | XSCC12 | XSCC11 | XSCC10 | XSCC9 | XSCC8 |
| Horizontal chrominance phase offset         | AE                    | XPHC7  | XPHC6  | XPHC5  | XPHC4  | XPHC3  | XPHC2  | XPHC1 | XPHC0 |
| Reserved                                    | AF                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)   | (1)   |
| Vertical scaling                            |                       |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |
| Vertical luminance scaling                  | В0                    | YSCY7  | YSCY6  | YSCY5  | YSCY4  | YSCY3  | YSCY2  | YSCY1 | YSCY0 |
| increment                                   | B1                    | YSCY15 | YSCY14 | YSCY13 | YSCY12 | YSCY11 | YSCY10 | YSCY9 | YSCY8 |
| Vertical chrominance scaling                | B2                    | YSCC7  | YSCC6  | YSCC5  | YSCC4  | YSCC3  | YSCC2  | YSCC1 | YSCC0 |
| increment                                   | В3                    | YSCC15 | YSCC14 | YSCC13 | YSCC12 | YSCC11 | YSCC10 | YSCC9 | YSCC8 |
| Vertical scaling mode control               | B4                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | YMIR   | (1)    | (1)    | (1)   | YMODE |
| Reserved                                    | B5 to B7              | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)   | (1)   |
| Vertical chrominance phase offset '00'      | B8                    | YPC07  | YPC06  | YPC05  | YPC04  | YPC03  | YPC02  | YPC01 | YPC00 |

**SAA7118** 

| REGISTER FUNCTION                      | SUB<br>ADDR.<br>(HEX) | D7    | D6    | D5     | D4     | D3    | D2    | D1    | D0    |
|--|-----------------------|-------|-------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Vertical chrominance phase offset '01' | В9                    | YPC17 | YPC16 | YPC15  | YPC14  | YPC13 | YPC12 | YPC11 | YPC10 |
| Vertical chrominance phase offset '10' | ВА                    | YPC27 | YPC26 | YPC25  | YPC24  | YPC23 | YPC22 | YPC21 | YPC20 |
| Vertical chrominance phase offset '11' | BB                    | YPC37 | YPC36 | YPC35  | YPC34  | YPC33 | YPC32 | YPC31 | YPC30 |
| Vertical luminance phase offset '00'   | ВС                    | YPY07 | YPY06 | YPY05  | YPY04  | YPY03 | YPY02 | YPY01 | YPY00 |
| Vertical luminance phase offset '01'   | BD                    | YPY17 | YPY16 | YPY15  | YPY14  | YPY13 | YPY12 | YPY11 | YPY10 |
| Vertical luminance phase offset '10'   | BE                    | YPY27 | YPY26 | YPY25  | YPY24  | YPY23 | YPY22 | YPY21 | YPY20 |
| Vertical luminance phase offset '11'   | BF                    | YPY37 | YPY36 | YPY35  | YPY34  | YPY33 | YPY32 | YPY31 | YPY30 |
| TASK B DEFINITION REGISTERS CO         | H то EFH              |       |       | •      |        |       |       |       |       |
| Basic settings and acquisition will    | ndow defin            | ition |       |        |        |       |       |       |       |
| Task handling control                  | C0                    | CONLH | OFIDC | FSKP2  | FSKP1  | FSKP0 | RPTSK | STRC1 | STRC0 |
| X-port formats and configuration       | C1                    | CONLV | HLDFV | SCSRC1 | SCSRC0 | SCRQE | FSC2  | FSC1  | FSC0  |
| Input reference signal definition      | C2                    | XFDV  | XFDH  | XDV1   | XDV0   | XCODE | XDH   | XDQ   | XCKS  |
| I-port formats and configuration       | C3                    | ICODE | I8_16 | FYSK   | FOI1   | FOI0  | FSI2  | FSI1  | FSI0  |
| Horizontal input window start          | C4                    | XO7   | XO6   | XO5    | XO4    | XO3   | XO2   | XO1   | XO0   |
|  | C5                    | (1)   | (1)   | (1)    | (1)    | XO11  | XO10  | XO9   | XO8   |
| Horizontal input window length         | C6                    | XS7   | XS6   | XS5    | XS4    | XS3   | XS2   | XS1   | XS0   |
|  | C7                    | (1)   | (1)   | (1)    | (1)    | XS11  | XS10  | XS9   | XS8   |
| Vertical input window start            | C8                    | Y07   | YO6   | YO5    | YO4    | YO3   | YO2   | YO1   | YO0   |
|  | C9                    | (1)   | (1)   | (1)    | (1)    | YO11  | YO10  | YO9   | YO8   |
| Vertical input window length           | CA                    | YS7   | YS6   | YS5    | YS4    | YS3   | YS2   | YS1   | YS0   |
|  | СВ                    | (1)   | (1)   | (1)    | (1)    | YS11  | YS10  | YS9   | YS8   |
| Horizontal output window length        | CC                    | XD7   | XD6   | XD5    | XD4    | XD3   | XD2   | XD1   | XD0   |
|  | CD                    | (1)   | (1)   | (1)    | (1)    | XD11  | XD10  | XD9   | XD8   |

| REGISTER FUNCTION                           | SUB<br>ADDR.<br>(HEX) | D7     | D6     | D5     | D4     | D3     | D2     | D1    | D0    |
|---|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| Vertical output window length               | CE                    | YD7    | YD6    | YD5    | YD4    | YD3    | YD2    | YD1   | YD0   |
| FIR filtering and prescaling                | CF                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | YD11   | YD10   | YD9   | YD8   |
|   | D0                    | (1)    | (1)    | VDOOF  | VD004  | VDOOO  | VDOOO  | VD004 | VD000 |
| Horizontal prescaling                       | D0                    | (1)    |        | XPSC5  | XPSC4  | XPSC3  | XPSC2  | XPSC1 | XPSC0 |
| Accumulation length                         | D1                    |        | (1)    | XACL5  | XACL4  | XACL3  | XACL2  | XACL1 | XACL0 |
| Prescaler DC gain and FIR prefilter control | D2                    | PFUV1  | PFUV0  | PFY1   | PFY0   | XC2_1  | XDCG2  | XDCG1 | XDCG0 |
| Reserved                                    | D3                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)   | (1)   |
| Luminance brightness control                | D4                    | BRIG7  | BRIG6  | BRIG5  | BRIG4  | BRIG3  | BRIG2  | BRIG1 | BRIG0 |
| Luminance contrast control                  | D5                    | CONT7  | CONT6  | CONT5  | CONT4  | CONT3  | CONT2  | CONT1 | CONT0 |
| Chrominance saturation control              | D6                    | SATN7  | SATN6  | SATN5  | SATN4  | SATN3  | SATN2  | SATN1 | SATN0 |
| Reserved                                    | D7                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)   | (1)   |
| Horizontal phase scaling                    | '                     |        |        |        |        |        |        | •     | •     |
| Horizontal luminance scaling increment      | D8                    | XSCY7  | XSCY6  | XSCY5  | XSCY4  | XSCY3  | XSCY2  | XSCY1 | XSCY0 |
|   | D9                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | XSCY12 | XSCY11 | XSCY10 | XSCY9 | XSCY8 |
| Horizontal luminance phase offset           | DA                    | XPHY7  | XPHY6  | XPHY5  | XPHY4  | XPHY3  | XPHY2  | XPHY1 | XPHY0 |
| Reserved                                    | DB                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)   | (1)   |
| Horizontal chrominance scaling              | DC                    | XSCC7  | XSCC6  | XSCC5  | XSCC4  | XSCC3  | XSCC2  | XSCC1 | XSCC0 |
| increment                                   | DD                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | XSCC12 | XSCC11 | XSCC10 | XSCC9 | XSCC8 |
| Horizontal chrominance phase offset         | DE                    | XPHC7  | XPHC6  | XPHC5  | XPHC4  | XPHC3  | XPHC2  | XPHC1 | XPHC0 |
| Reserved                                    | DF                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)   | (1)   |
| Vertical scaling                            |                       |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |
| Vertical luminance scaling                  | E0                    | YSCY7  | YSCY6  | YSCY5  | YSCY4  | YSCY3  | YSCY2  | YSCY1 | YSCY0 |
| increment                                   | E1                    | YSCY15 | YSCY14 | YSCY13 | YSCY12 | YSCY11 | YSCY10 | YSCY9 | YSCY8 |
| Vertical chrominance scaling                | E2                    | YSCC7  | YSCC6  | YSCC5  | YSCC4  | YSCC3  | YSCC2  | YSCC1 | YSCC0 |
| increment                                   | E3                    | YSCC15 | YSCC14 | YSCC13 | YSCC12 | YSCC11 | YSCC10 | YSCC9 | YSCC8 |
| Vertical scaling mode control               | E4                    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | YMIR   | (1)    | (1)    | (1)   | YMODE |
| Reserved                                    | E5 to E7              | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)    | (1)   | (1)   |

comb filter and component video input

Multistandard video decoder with adaptive

| REGISTER FUNCTION                      | SUB<br>ADDR.<br>(HEX) | D7    | D6    | D5    | D4    | D3    | D2    | D1    | D0    |
|--|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Vertical chrominance phase offset '00' | E8                    | YPC07 | YPC06 | YPC05 | YPC04 | YPC03 | YPC02 | YPC01 | YPC00 |
| Vertical chrominance phase offset '01' | E9                    | YPC17 | YPC16 | YPC15 | YPC14 | YPC13 | YPC12 | YPC11 | YPC10 |
| Vertical chrominance phase offset '10' | EA                    | YPC27 | YPC26 | YPC25 | YPC24 | YPC23 | YPC22 | YPC21 | YPC20 |
| Vertical chrominance phase offset '11' | EB                    | YPC37 | YPC36 | YPC35 | YPC34 | YPC33 | YPC32 | YPC31 | YPC30 |
| Vertical luminance phase offset '00'   | EC                    | YPY07 | YPY06 | YPY05 | YPY04 | YPY03 | YPY02 | YPY01 | YPY00 |
| Vertical luminance phase offset '01'   | ED                    | YPY17 | YPY16 | YPY15 | YPY14 | YPY13 | YPY12 | YPY11 | YPY10 |
| Vertical luminance phase offset '10'   | EE                    | YPY27 | YPY26 | YPY25 | YPY24 | YPY23 | YPY22 | YPY21 | YPY20 |
| Vertical luminance phase offset '11'   | EF                    | YPY37 | YPY36 | YPY35 | YPY34 | YPY33 | YPY32 | YPY31 | YPY30 |

### Note

1. All unused control bits must be programmed with logic 0 to ensure compatibility to future enhancements.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 15.2 I<sup>2</sup>C-bus details

#### 15.2.1 SUBADDRESS 00H

Table 38 Chip Version (CV) identification; 00H[7:4]; read only register

| FUNCTION          | LOGIC LEVELS |     |     |     |  |  |  |
|-------------------|--------------|-----|-----|-----|--|--|--|
| FUNCTION          | ID7          | ID6 | ID5 | ID4 |  |  |  |
| Chip Version (CV) | CV3          | CV2 | CV1 | CV0 |  |  |  |

#### 15.2.2 SUBADDRESS 01H

The programming of the horizontal increment delay is used to match internal processing delays to the delay of the ADC. Use recommended position only.

Table 39 Horizontal increment delay; 01H[6:0]

| BIT    | DESCRIPTION                                     | SYMBOL               | VALUE | FUNCTION   |
|--------|---|----------------------|-------|--|
| D6     | white peak control off                          | WPOFF <sup>(1)</sup> | 0     | white peak control active (AD signal is attenuated, if nominal luminance output white level is exceeded) |
|        |   |                      | 1     | white peak control disabled  |
| D[5:4] | update hysteresis for 9-bit<br>gain (see Fig.9) | GUDL[1:0]            | 00    | off  |
|        |   |                      | 01    | ±1 LSB   |
|        |   |                      | 10    | ±2 LSB   |
|        |   |                      | 11    | ±3 LSB   |
| D[3:0] | increment delay                                 | IDEL[3:0]            | 1111  | no update  |
|        |   |                      | 1110  | minimum delay  |
|        |   |                      | 0111  | recommended position   |
|        |   |                      | 0000  | maximum delay  |

#### Note

1. HLNRS = 1 should not be used in combination with WPOFF = 0.

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 15.2.3 SUBADDRESS 02H

Table 40 Analog input control 1 (AICO1); 02H[7:0]; note 1

| BIT     | DESCRIPTION           | SYMBOL             | VALUE  | FUNCTION   |  |  |
|---------|-----------------------|--------------------|--------|--|--|--|
| D[7:6]  | analog function       | FUSE[1:0]          | 00     | amplifier plus anti-alias filter bypassed  |  |  |
|         | select; see           |                    | 01     |  |  |  |
|         | Figs 4 and 8          |                    | 10     | amplifier active   |  |  |
|         |                       |                    | 11     | amplifier plus anti-alias filter active  |  |  |
| CVBS    | modes 1               | -                  |        |  |  |  |
| D[5:0]  | D[5:0] mode selection | MODE[5:0]          | 000000 | Mode 00: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al11; see Fig.57   |  |  |
|         |                       |                    | 000001 | Mode 01: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al12; see Fig.52   |  |  |
|         |                       |                    | 000010 | Mode 02: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al21; see Fig.53   |  |  |
|         |                       |                    | 000011 | Mode 03: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al22; see Fig.54   |  |  |
|         |                       |                    | 000100 | Mode 04: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al23; see Fig.55   |  |  |
|         |                       |                    | 000101 | Mode 05: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al24; see Fig.56   |  |  |
| Y + C r | nodes 1               | '                  |        |  |  |  |
| D[5:0]  | D[5:0] mode selection | election MODE[5:0] | 000110 | Mode 06: Y (automatic gain) from Al11 + C (gain adjustable via GAl28 to GAl20) from Al21; note 2; see Fig.57 |  |  |
|         |                       |                    |        |  | 000111   | Mode 07: Y (automatic gain) from Al12 + C (gain adjustable via GAl28 to GAl20) from Al22; note 2; see Fig.58 |
|         |                       |                    | 001000 | <b>Mode 08</b> : Y (automatic gain) from Al11 + C (gain adapted to Y gain) from Al21; note 2; see Fig.59     |  |  |
|         |                       |                    | ı      | 001001   | <b>Mode 09</b> : Y (automatic gain) from Al12 + C (gain adapted to Y gain) from Al22; note 2; see Fig.60     |  |
|         |                       |                    | 001010 | Mode 0A: Y (automatic gain) from Al13 + C (gain adjustable via GAl28 to GAl20) from Al23; note 2; see Fig.61 |  |  |
|         |                       |                    |        | 001011   | Mode 0B: Y (automatic gain) from Al14 + C (gain adjustable via GAl28 to GAl20) from Al24; note 2; see Fig.62 |  |
|         |                       |                    |        | 001100   | <b>Mode 0C</b> : Y (automatic gain) from Al13 + C (gain adapted to Y gain) from Al23; note 2; see Fig.63     |  |
|         |                       |                    | 001101 | <b>Mode 0D</b> : Y (automatic gain) from Al14 + C (gain adapted to Y gain) from Al24; note 2; see Fig.64     |  |  |

SAA7118

| BIT                   | DESCRIPTION        | SYMBOL    | VALUE  | FUNCTION  |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------|--|---|
| CVBS                  | modes 2            |           |  |   |
| D[5:0] mode selection | mode selection     | MODE[5:0] | 001110   | Mode 0E: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al13; see Fig.65  |
|                       |                    |           | 001111   | Mode 0F: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al14; see Fig.66  |
|                       |                    |           | 010000   | Mode 10: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al31; see Fig.67  |
|                       |                    |           | 010001   | Mode 11: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al32; see Fig.68  |
|                       |                    |           | 010010   | Mode 12: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al41; see Fig.69  |
|                       |                    |           | 010011   | Mode 13: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al42; see Fig.70  |
|                       |                    |           | 010100   | Mode 14: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al43; see Fig.71  |
|                       |                    |           | 010101   | Mode 15: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al44; see Fig.72  |
| Y + C r               | nodes 2            |           |  |   |
| D[5:0] mode selection | MODE[5:0]          | 010110    | <b>Mode 16</b> : Y (automatic gain) from Al31 + C (gain adjustable via GAl28 to GAl20) from Al41; note 2; see Fig.73 |   |
|                       |                    |           | 010111   | <b>Mode 17</b> : Y (automatic gain) from Al32 + C (gain adjustable via GAl28 to GAl20) from Al42; note 2; see Fig.74              |
|                       |                    |           | 011000   | <b>Mode 18</b> : Y (automatic gain) from Al31 + C (gain adapted to Y gain) from Al41; note 2; see Fig.75                          |
|                       |                    |           | 011001   | <b>Mode 19</b> : Y (automatic gain) from Al32 + C (gain adapted to Y gain) from Al42; note 2; see Fig.76                          |
|                       |                    |           | 011010   | Mode 1A: Y (automatic gain) from Al33 + C (gain adjustable via GAl28 to GAl20) from Al43; note 2; see Fig.77                      |
|                       |                    |           | 011011   | Mode 1B: Y (automatic gain) from Al34 + C (gain adjustable via GAl28 to GAl20) from Al44; note 2; see Fig.78                      |
|                       |                    |           | 011100   | <b>Mode 1C</b> : Y (automatic gain) from Al33 + C (gain adapted to Y gain) from Al43; note 2; see Fig.79                          |
|                       |                    |           | 011101   | <b>Mode 1D</b> : Y (automatic gain) from Al34 + C (gain adapted to Y gain) from Al44; note 2; see Fig.80                          |
| CVBS                  | modes 3            |           |  |   |
| D[5:0]                | mode selection     | MODE[5:0] | 011110   | Mode 1E: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al33; see Fig.81  |
|                       |                    |           | 011111   | Mode 1F: CVBS (automatic gain) from Al34; see Fig.82  |
| Y-P <sub>B</sub> -P   | <sub>R</sub> modes | <u></u>   |  |   |
| D[5:0]                | mode selection     | MODE[5:0] | 100000   | <b>Mode 20</b> : SY-P <sub>B</sub> -P <sub>R</sub> (automatic gain for sync channel only) from Al11, Al21, Al31, Al41; see Fig.83 |
|                       |                    |           | 100001   | <b>Mode 21</b> : SY-P <sub>B</sub> -P <sub>R</sub> (automatic gain for sync channel only) from Al12, Al22, Al32, Al42; see Fig.84 |
|                       |                    |           | 100010 to 101101   | reserved  |
|                       |                    |           | 101110   | <b>Mode 2E</b> : SY-P <sub>B</sub> -P <sub>R</sub> (automatic gain for sync channel only) from Al13, Al23, Al33, Al43; see Fig.85 |
|                       |                    |           | 101110   | <b>Mode 2F</b> : SY-P <sub>B</sub> -P <sub>R</sub> (automatic gain for sync channel only) from Al14, Al24, Al34, Al44; see Fig.86 |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

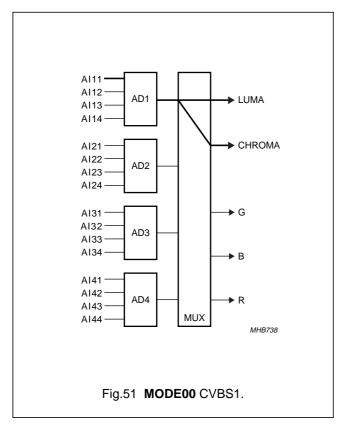
**SAA7118** 

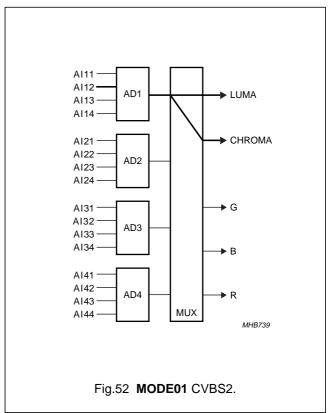
| BIT    | DESCRIPTION               | SYMBOL    | VALUE            | FUNCTION   |
|--------|---------------------------|-----------|------------------|--|
| RGB m  | nodes                     | •         |                  |  |
| D[5:0] | D[5:0] mode selection MOD | MODE[5:0] | 110000           | <b>Mode 30</b> : SRGB (automatic gain for sync channel only) from Al11, Al21, Al31, Al41; see Fig.87 |
|        |                           |           | 110001           | <b>Mode 31</b> : SRGB (automatic gain for sync channel only) from Al12, Al22, Al32, Al42; see Fig.88 |
|        |                           |           | 110010 to 111101 | reserved   |
|        |                           |           | 111110           | <b>Mode 3E</b> : SRGB (automatic gain for sync channel only) from Al13, Al23, Al33, Al43; see Fig.89 |
|        |                           |           | 111111           | <b>Mode 3F</b> : SRGB (automatic gain for sync channel only) from Al14, Al24, Al34, Al44; see Fig.90 |
| VSB m  | odes; see Fig.91          |           |                  |  |
| D[5:0] | mode selection            | MODE[5:0] | 000000           | <b>Mode 00</b> : input AI11; REFA = 1, DOSL = 0, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 000001           | <b>Mode 01</b> : input Al12; REFA = 1, DOSL = 0, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 001110           | Mode 0E: input Al13; REFA = 1, DOSL = 0, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 001111           | Mode 0F: input AI14; REFA = 1, DOSL = 0, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 000010           | <b>Mode 02</b> : input Al21; REFA = 1, DOSL = 1, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 000011           | <b>Mode 03</b> : input Al22; REFA = 1, DOSL = 1, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 000100           | <b>Mode 04</b> : input Al23; REFA = 1, DOSL = 1, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 000101           | <b>Mode 05</b> : input Al24; REFA = 1, DOSL = 1, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 010000           | <b>Mode 10</b> : input Al31; REFA = 1, DOSL = 2, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 010001           | <b>Mode 11</b> : input Al32; REFA = 1, DOSL = 2, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 011110           | <b>Mode 1E</b> : input Al33; REFA = 1, DOSL = 2, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 011111           | <b>Mode 1F</b> : input Al34; REFA = 1, DOSL = 2, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 010010           | <b>Mode 12</b> : input Al41; REFA = 1, DOSL = 3, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 010011           | <b>Mode 13</b> : input Al42; REFA = 1, DOSL = 3, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 010100           | <b>Mode 14</b> : input Al43; REFA = 1, DOSL = 3, GAFIX = 1   |
|        |                           |           | 010101           | <b>Mode 15</b> : input Al44; REFA = 1, DOSL = 3, GAFIX = 1   |

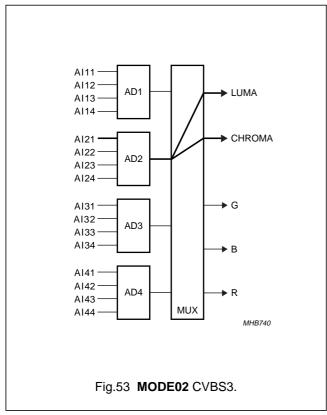
### Notes

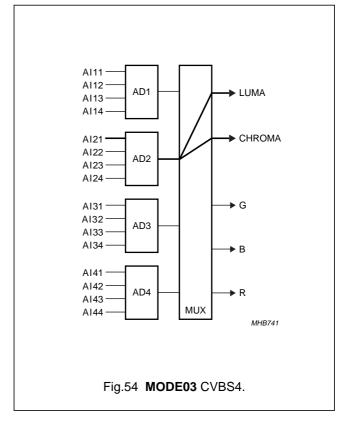
- 1. Always refer to Table 70, usage of bits FSWE and FSWI.
- 2. To take full advantage of the Y/C-modes 06 to 1D and 16 to 1D the I<sup>2</sup>C-bus bit BYPS (subaddress 09H, bit 7) should be set to logic 1 (full luminance bandwidth).

**SAA7118** 

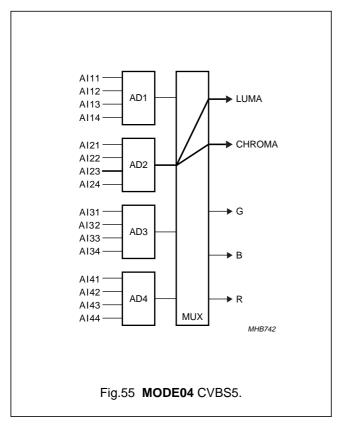


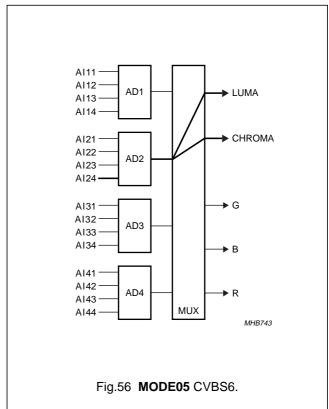


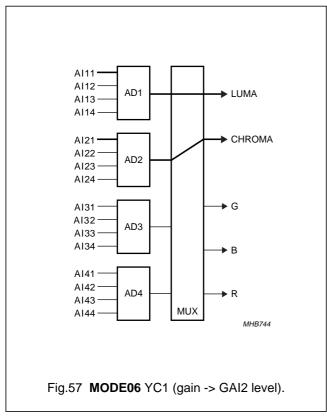


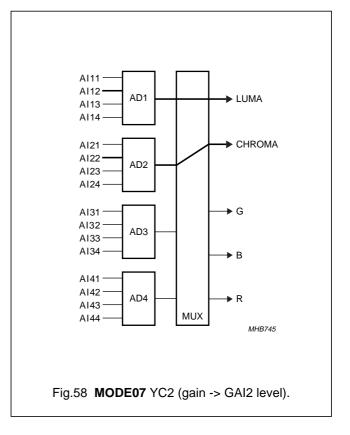


**SAA7118** 

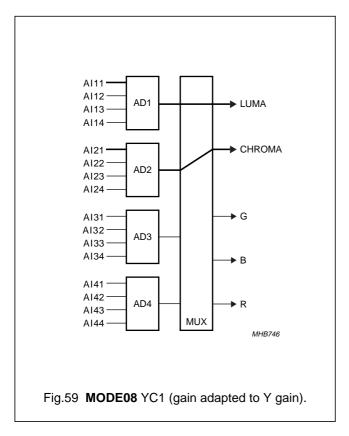


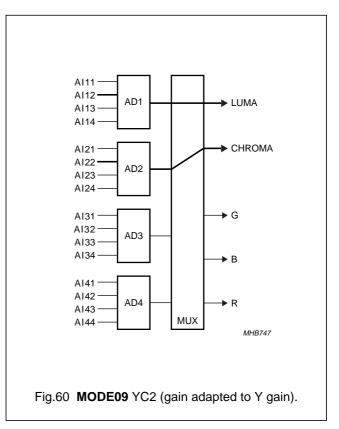


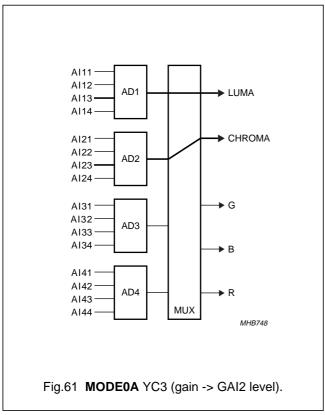


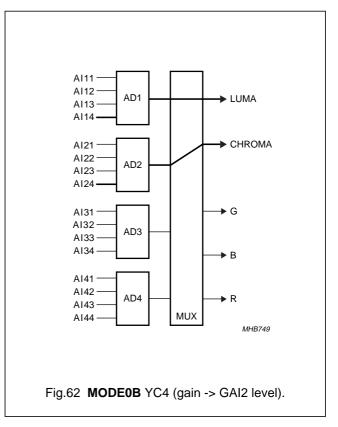


### **SAA7118**

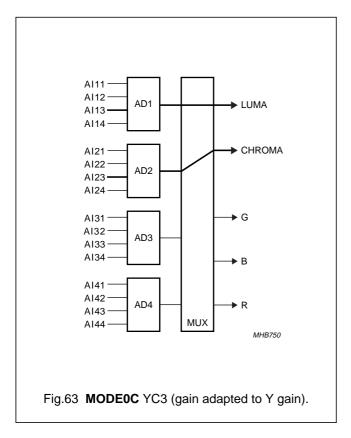


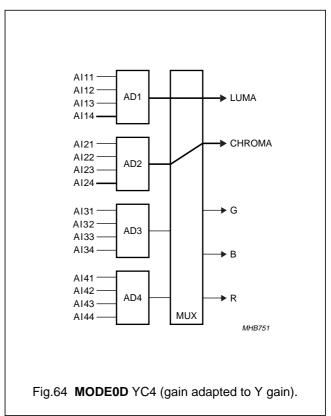


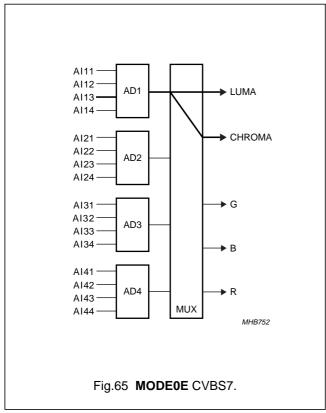


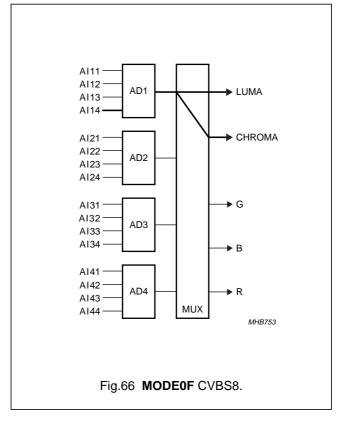


### **SAA7118**

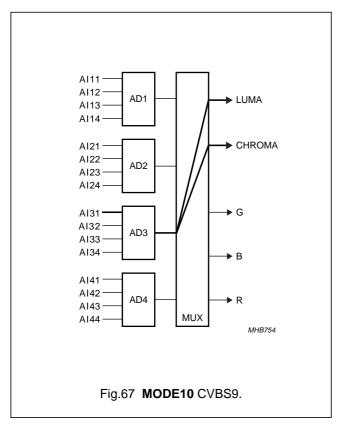


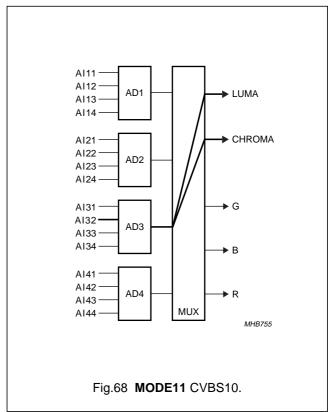


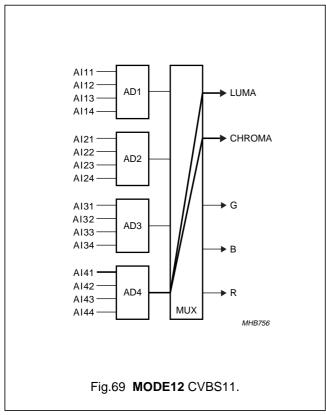


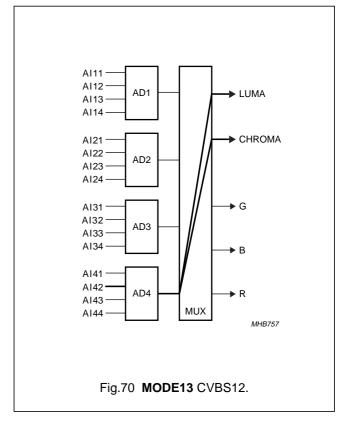


**SAA7118** 





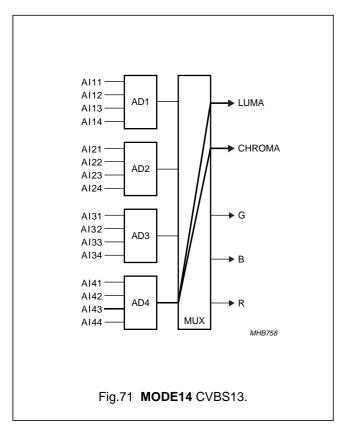


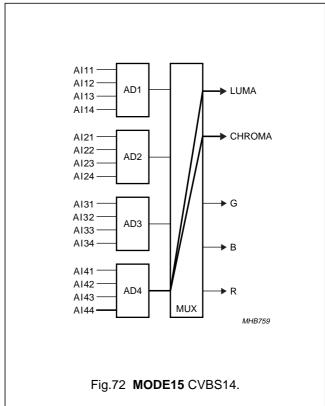


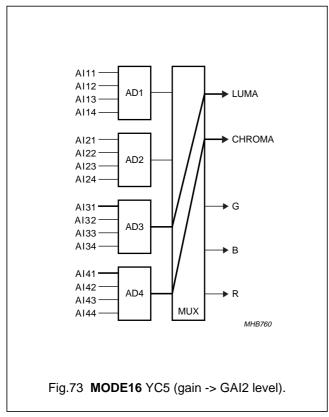
2001 May 30

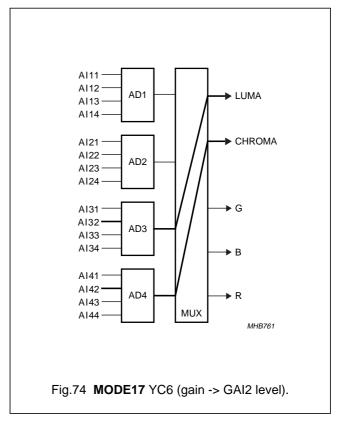
111

**SAA7118** 

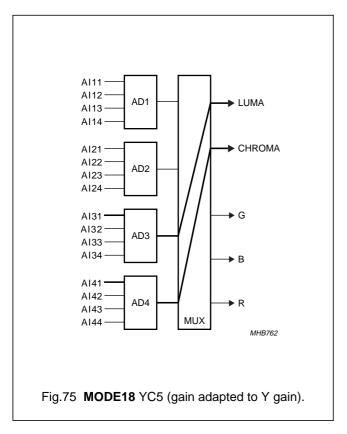


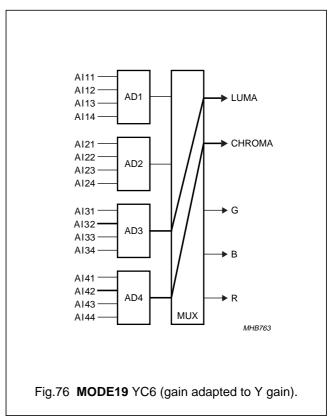


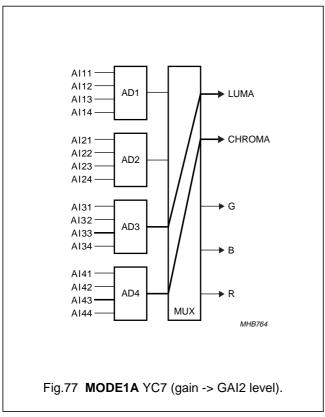


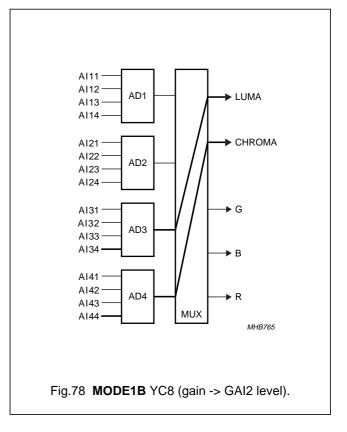


**SAA7118** 

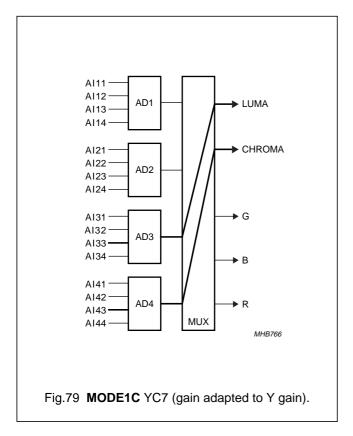


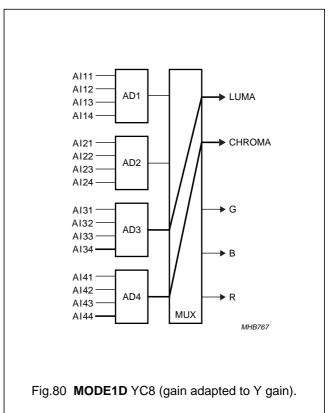


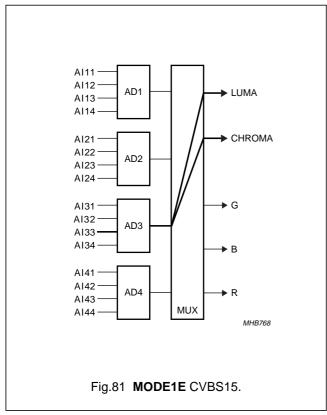


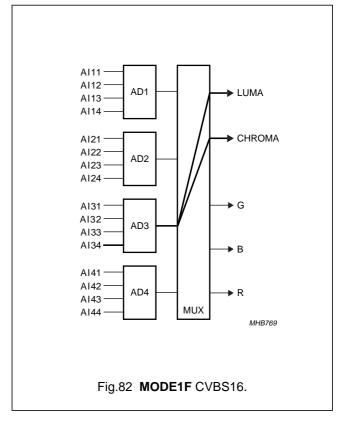


**SAA7118** 

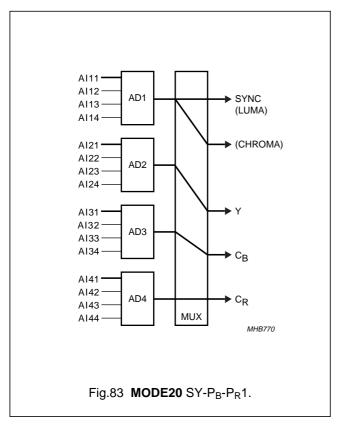


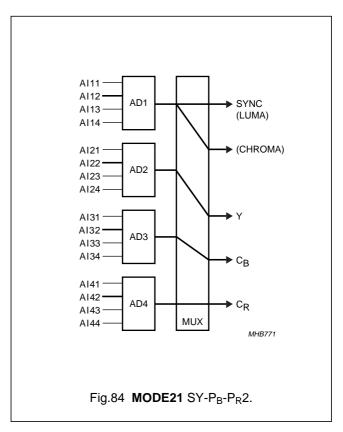


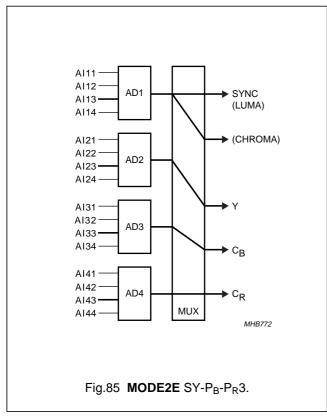


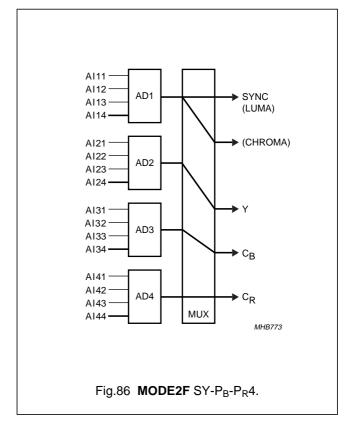


### **SAA7118**

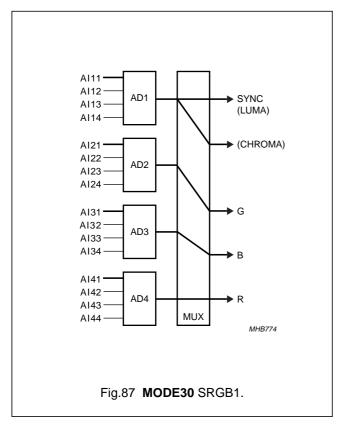


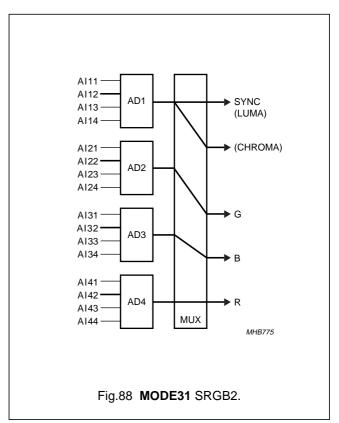


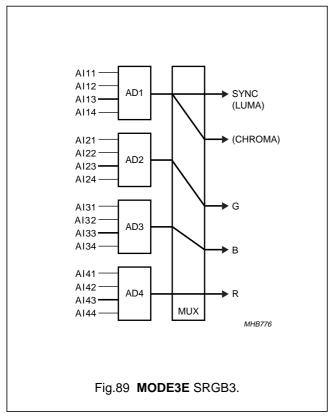


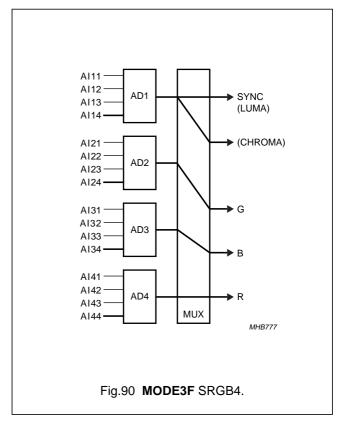


**SAA7118** 

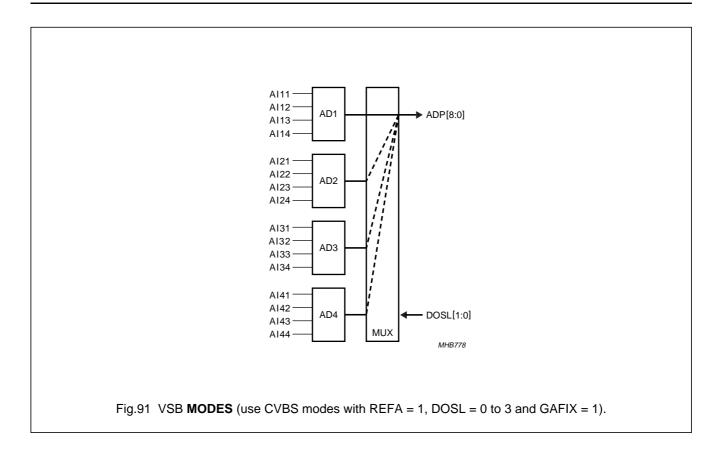








**SAA7118** 



**SAA7118** 

#### 15.2.4 SUBADDRESS 03H

Table 41 Analog input control 2 (AICO2); 03H[6:0]

| BIT | DESCRIPTION                              | SYMBOL | VALUE | FUNCTION  |
|-----|--|--------|-------|---|
| D6  | HL not reference select                  | HLNRS  | 0     | normal clamping if decoder is in unlocked state   |
|     |  |        | 1     | reference select if decoder is in unlocked state  |
| D5  | AGC hold during vertical blanking period | VBSL   | 0     | short vertical blanking (AGC disabled during equalization and serration pulses); <b>recommended setting</b>                                   |
|     |  |        | 1     | long vertical blanking (AGC disabled from start of pre-equalization pulses until start of active video (line 22 for 60 Hz, line 24 for 50 Hz) |
| D4  | colour peak off                          | CPOFF  | 0     | colour peak control active (AD signal is attenuated, if maximum input level is exceeded, avoids clipping effects on screen)                   |
|     |  |        | 1     | colour peak off   |
| D3  | automatic gain control                   | HOLDG  | 0     | AGC active  |
|     | integration                              |        | 1     | AGC integration hold (freeze)   |
| D2  | gain control fix                         | GAFIX  | 0     | automatic gain controlled by MODE5 to MODE0   |
|     |  |        | 1     | gain is user programmable via GAI[17:10] and GAI[27:20]   |
| D1  | static gain control channel 2 sign bit   | GAI28  |       | see Table 43  |
| D0  | static gain control channel 1 sign bit   | GAI18  |       | see Table 42  |

#### 15.2.5 SUBADDRESS 04H

Table 42 Analog input control 3 (AICO3): static gain control channel 1; 03H[0] and 04H[7:0]

| DECIMAL<br>VALUE | GAIN<br>(dB) | SIGN BIT<br>03H[0] | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0                        |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
|------------------|--------------|--------------------|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| VALUE            | (dB)         | GAI18              | GAI17 GAI16 GAI15 GAI14 GAI13 GAI12 GAI11 GA |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |
| 0                | -3           | 0                  | 0  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |  |
| 144              | 0            | 0                  | 1  | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |  |
| 145              | 0            | 0                  | 1  | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |  |  |
| 511              | +6           | 1                  | 1  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |  |  |

#### 15.2.6 SUBADDRESS 05H

Table 43 Analog input control 4 (AICO4); static gain control channel 2; 03H[1] and 05H[7:0]

| DECIMAL<br>VALUE | GAIN | SIGN BIT<br>03H[1] |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|------------------|------|--------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| VALUE            | (dB) | GAI28              | GAI27 GAI26 GAI25 GAI24 GAI23 GAI22 GAI21 GAI20 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 0                | -3   | 0                  | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 144              | 0    | 0                  | 1   | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 145              | 0    | 0                  | 1   | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 511              | +6   | 1                  | 1   | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.2.7 SUBADDRESS 06H

Table 44 Horizontal sync start; 06H[7:0]

| DELAY TIME          |   |   | COI        | NTROL BIT    | S D7 TO [   | 00          |      |      |  |
|---------------------|---|---|------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|------|------|--|
| (STEP SIZE = 8/LLC) | HSB7  | HSB6  | HSB5       | HSB4         | HSB3        | HSB2        | HSB1 | HSB0 |  |
| -128109 (50 Hz)     |   | forbidden (outside available central counter range) |            |              |             |             |      |      |  |
| -128108 (60 Hz)     |   |   |            |              |             |             |      |      |  |
| –108 (50 Hz)        | 1   | 0   | 0          | 1            | 0           | 1           | 0    | 0    |  |
| –107 (60 Hz)        | 1   | 0   | 0          | 1            | 0           | 1           | 0    | 1    |  |
| 108 (50 Hz)         | 0   | 1   | 1          | 0            | 1           | 1           | 0    | 0    |  |
| 107 (60 Hz)         | 0   | 1   | 1          | 0            | 1           | 0           | 1    | 1    |  |
| 109127 (50 Hz)      | forbidden (outside available central counter range) |   |            |              |             |             |      |      |  |
| 108127 (60 Hz)      |   | IOIDI   | uuen (outs | iue availabi | e central c | ounter ranç | Je)  |      |  |

#### 15.2.8 SUBADDRESS 07H

Table 45 Horizontal sync stop; 07H[7:0]

| DELAY TIME          |   | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0                               |            |              |             |             |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------|---|---|------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| (STEP SIZE = 8/LLC) | HSS7  | HSS6  | HSS5       | HSS4         | HSS3        | HSS2        | HSS1 | HSS0 |  |  |  |  |
| -128109 (50 Hz)     |   | forbidden (outside available central counter range) |            |              |             |             |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| -128108 (60 Hz)     |   |   |            |              |             |             |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| –108 (50 Hz)        | 1   | 0   | 0          | 1            | 0           | 1           | 0    | 0    |  |  |  |  |
| –107 (60 Hz)        | 1   | 0   | 0          | 1            | 0           | 1           | 0    | 1    |  |  |  |  |
| 108 (50 Hz)         | 0   | 1   | 1          | 0            | 1           | 1           | 0    | 0    |  |  |  |  |
| 107 (60 Hz)         | 0   | 1   | 1          | 0            | 1           | 0           | 1    | 1    |  |  |  |  |
| 109127 (50 Hz)      | forbidden (outside available central counter range) |   |            |              |             |             |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| 108127 (60 Hz)      |   | IOIDI   | uuen (outs | iue availabi | e central c | ounter ranç | Je)  |      |  |  |  |  |

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.2.9 SUBADDRESS 08H

Table 46 Sync control; 08H[7:0]

| BIT    | DESCRIPTION                        | SYMBOL    | VALUE | FUNCTION   |
|--------|------------------------------------|-----------|-------|--|
| D7     | automatic field detection          | AUFD      | 0     | field state directly controlled via FSEL   |
|        |                                    |           | 1     | automatic field detection; recommended setting   |
| D6     | field selection; active if         | FSEL      | 0     | 50 Hz, 625 lines   |
|        | AUFD = 0                           |           | 1     | 60 Hz, 525 lines   |
| D5     | forced ODD/EVEN toggle             | FOET      | 0     | ODD/EVEN signal toggles only with interlaced source  |
|        |                                    |           | 1     | ODD/EVEN signal toggles fieldwise even if source is non-interlaced                                       |
| D[4:3] | horizontal time constant selection | HTC[1:0]  | 00    | TV mode, recommended for poor quality TV signals only; do not use for new applications                   |
|        |                                    |           | 01    | VTR mode, recommended if a deflection control circuit is directly connected at the output of the decoder |
|        |                                    |           | 10    | reserved   |
|        |                                    |           | 11    | fast locking mode; recommended setting   |
| D2     | horizontal PLL                     | HPLL      | 0     | PLL closed   |
|        |                                    |           | 1     | PLL open; horizontal frequency fixed   |
| D[1:0] | vertical noise reduction           | VNOI[1:0] | 00    | normal mode; recommended setting   |
|        |                                    |           | 01    | fast mode, applicable for stable sources only; automatic field detection (AUFD) <b>must</b> be disabled  |
|        |                                    |           | 10    | free running mode  |
|        |                                    |           | 11    | vertical noise reduction bypassed  |

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.2.10 SUBADDRESS 09H

Table 47 Luminance control; 09H[7:0]

| BIT    | DESCRIPTION   | SYMBOL    | VALUE | FUNCTION  |
|--------|---|-----------|-------|---|
| D7     | chrominance trap/comb filter bypass                     | BYPS      | 0     | chrominance trap or luminance comb filter active; default for CVBS mode             |
|        |   |           | 1     | chrominance trap or luminance comb filter bypassed; default for S-video mode        |
| D6     | adaptive luminance comb filter                          | YCOMB     | 0     | disabled (= chrominance trap enabled, if BYPS = 0)                                  |
|        |   |           | 1     | active, if BYPS = 0   |
| D5     | processing delay in non comb filter mode                | LDEL      | 0     | processing delay is equal to internal pipelining delay; recommended setting         |
|        |   |           | 1     | one (NTSC standards) or two (PAL standards) video lines additional processing delay |
| D4     | remodulation bandwidth for luminance; see Figs 14 to 17 | LUBW      | 0     | small remodulation bandwidth (narrow chroma notch ⇒ higher luminance bandwidth)     |
|        |   |           | 1     | large remodulation bandwidth (wider chroma notch ⇒ smaller luminance bandwidth)     |
| D[3:0] | sharpness control, luminance                            | LUFI[3:0] | 0001  | resolution enhancement filter 8.0 dB at 4.1 MHz                                     |
|        | filter characteristic; see Fig.18                       |           | 0010  | resolution enhancement filter 6.8 dB at 4.1 MHz                                     |
|        |   |           | 0011  | resolution enhancement filter 5.1 dB at 4.1 MHz                                     |
|        |   |           | 0100  | resolution enhancement filter 4.1 dB at 4.1 MHz                                     |
|        |   |           | 0101  | resolution enhancement filter 3.0 dB at 4.1 MHz                                     |
|        |   |           | 0110  | resolution enhancement filter 2.3 dB at 4.1 MHz                                     |
|        |   |           | 0111  | resolution enhancement filter 1.6 dB at 4.1 MHz                                     |
|        |   |           | 0000  | plain   |
|        |   |           | 1000  | low-pass filter 2 dB at 4.1 MHz   |
|        |   |           | 1001  | low-pass filter 3 dB at 4.1 MHz   |
|        |   |           | 1010  | low-pass filter 3 dB at 3.3 MHz; 4 dB at 4.1 MHz                                    |
|        |   |           | 1011  | low-pass filter 3 dB at 2.6 MHz; 8 dB at 4.1 MHz                                    |
|        |   |           | 1100  | low-pass filter 3 dB at 2.4 MHz; 14 dB at 4.1 MHz                                   |
|        |   |           | 1101  | low-pass filter 3 dB at 2.2 MHz; notch at 3.4 MHz                                   |
|        |   |           | 1110  | low-pass filter 3 dB at 1.9 MHz; notch at 3.0 MHz                                   |
|        |   |           | 1111  | low-pass filter 3 dB at 1.7 MHz; notch at 2.5 MHz                                   |

#### 15.2.11 SUBADDRESS OAH

Table 48 Luminance brightness control: decoder part; 0AH[7:0]

| OFFSET          | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |
|-----------------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|
|                 | DBRI7                 | DBRI6 | DBRI5 | DBRI4 | DBRI3 | DBRI2 | DBRI1 | DBRI0 |  |  |  |
| 255 (bright)    | 1                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |  |  |
| 128 (ITU level) | 1                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |
| 0 (dark)        | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.2.12 SUBADDRESS OBH

Table 49 Luminance contrast control: decoder part; 0BH[7:0]

| GAIN                   | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |
|------------------------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|
| GAIN                   | DCON7                 | DCON6 | DCON5 | DCON4 | DCON3 | DCON2 | DCON1 | DCON0 |  |  |  |
| 1.984 (maximum)        | 0                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |  |  |
| 1.063 (ITU level)      | 0                     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 1     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |
| 1.0                    | 0                     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |
| 0 (luminance off)      | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |
| -1 (inverse luminance) | 1                     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |
| -2 (inverse luminance) | 1                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |

#### 15.2.13 SUBADDRESS OCH

 Table 50 Chrominance saturation control: decoder part; 0CH[7:0]

| GAIN                     | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|
| GAIN                     | DSAT7                 | DSAT6 | DSAT5 | DSAT4 | DSAT3 | DSAT2 | DSAT1 | DSAT0 |  |  |  |
| 1.984 (maximum)          | 0                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |  |  |
| 1.0 (ITU level)          | 0                     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |
| 0 (colour off)           | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |
| -1 (inverse chrominance) | 1                     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |
| -2 (inverse chrominance) | 1                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |

#### 15.2.14 SUBADDRESS ODH

Table 51 Chrominance hue control; 0DH[7:0]

| HUE PHASE (DEG) | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |
|-----------------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|
|                 | HUEC7                 | HUEC6 | HUEC5 | HUEC4 | HUEC3 | HUEC2 | HUEC1 | HUEC0 |  |  |  |
| +178.6          | 0                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |  |  |
| 0               | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |
| –180            | 1                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 15.2.15 SUBADDRESS 0EH

Table 52 Chrominance control 1; 0EH[7:0]

| BIT    | DESCRIPTION                                  | SYMBOL    | VALUE | F  | UNCTION   |  |  |
|--------|--|-----------|-------|--|---|--|--|
| ы      | DESCRIPTION                                  | STIVIBUL  | VALUE | 50 Hz/625 LINES  | 60 Hz/525 LINES   |  |  |
| D7     | clear DTO                                    | CDTO      | 0     | disabled   |   |  |  |
|        |  |           | 1     | Every time CDTO is set, the internal subcarrie phase is reset to 0° and the RTCO output generated to at time slot 68 (see document "RTC Furbescription", available on request). So an iden subcarrier phase can be generated by an exter (e.g. an encoder); if a DTO reset is programme CDTO it has always to be executed in the followant of the state of the second of the s |   |  |  |
| D[6:4] | colour standard selection                    | CSTD[2:0] | 000   | PAL BGDHI (4.43 MHz)   | NTSC M (3.58 MHz)   |  |  |
|        | in non AUTO mode                             |           | 001   | NTSC 4.43 (50 Hz)  | PAL 4.43 (60 Hz)  |  |  |
|        |  |           | 010   | Combination-PAL N<br>(3.58 MHz)  | NTSC 4.43 (60 Hz)   |  |  |
|        |  |           | 011   | NTSC N (3.58 MHz)  | PAL M (3.58 MHz)  |  |  |
|        |  |           | 100   | reserved   | NTSC-Japan (3.58 MHz)   |  |  |
|        |  |           | 101   | SECAM  | reserved  |  |  |
|        |  |           | 110   | reserve  | ed; <b>do not use</b>   |  |  |
|        |  |           | 111   | reserve  | ed; do not use  |  |  |
| D[6:4] | colour standard selection in AUTO mode (AUTO | CSTD[2:0] | 000   | preferred standard <sup>(1)</sup> is<br>PAL BGDHI (4.43 MHz)   | preferred standard <sup>(1)</sup> is<br>NTSC M (3.58 MHz)                           |  |  |
|        | mode is selected, if either                  |           | 001   | reserve  | ed; <b>do not use</b>   |  |  |
|        | AUTO0 or AUTO1 is set; see below)            |           | 010   | reserve  | ed; <b>do not use</b>   |  |  |
|        |  |           | 011   | reserve  | ed; do not use  |  |  |
|        |  |           | 100   | preferred standard <sup>(1)</sup> is<br>PAL BGDHI (4.43 MHz)   | preferred standard <sup>(1)</sup> is<br>NTSC-Japan (3.58 MHz, no<br>7.5 IRE offset) |  |  |
|        |  |           | 101   | preferred standard <sup>(1)</sup> is SECAM   | preferred standard <sup>(1)</sup> is<br>NTSC M (3.58 MHz)                           |  |  |
|        |  |           | 110   | reserve  | ed; <b>do not use</b>   |  |  |
|        |  |           | 111   | reserve  | ed; <b>do not use</b>   |  |  |
| D3     | disable chrominance vertical filter and PAL  | DCVF      | 0     | chrominance vertical filte correction on (during act   |   |  |  |
|        | phase error correction                       |           | 1     | chrominance vertical filte correction permanently of   |   |  |  |
| D2     | fast colour time constant                    | FCTC      | 0     | nominal time constant  |   |  |  |
|        |  |           | 1     |  |   |  |  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

| BIT           | DESCRIPTION                | SYMBOL    | VALUE | FUNCTION  |                 |  |  |  |
|---------------|----------------------------|-----------|-------|---|-----------------|--|--|--|
| ы             | DESCRIPTION                | STWIDOL   | VALUE | 50 Hz/625 LINES   | 60 Hz/525 LINES |  |  |  |
| 14H[2]        | automatic chrominance      | AUTO[1:0] | 00    | disabled  |                 |  |  |  |
| and<br>0EH[1] | standard detection control |           | 01    | active, filter settings and sharpness control are preset to default values according to the detected standard and mode; recommended setting |                 |  |  |  |
|               |                            |           | 10    | active, filter settings are according to the detected   |                 |  |  |  |
|               |                            |           | 11    | active, but no filter presets   |                 |  |  |  |
| D0            | adaptive chrominance       | ССОМВ     | 0     | disabled  |                 |  |  |  |
|               | comb filter                |           | 1     | active  |                 |  |  |  |

#### Note

1. The meaning of 'preferred standard' is, that the internal search machine will always give priority to the selected standard, thus the recognition time for these standards is kept short.

#### 15.2.16 SUBADDRESS OFH

Table 53 Chrominance gain control; 0FH[7:0]

| BIT    | DESCRIPTION                          | SYMBOL     | VALUE    | FUNCTION  |
|--------|--------------------------------------|------------|----------|---|
| D7     | automatic chrominance                | ACGC       | 0        | on; recommended setting   |
|        | gain control                         |            | 1        | programmable gain via CGAIN6 to CGAIN0; need to be set for SECAM standard |
| D[6:0] | chrominance gain value               | CGAIN[6:0] | 000 0000 | minimum gain (0.5)  |
|        | (if ACGC is set to logic 1) 010 0100 |            | 010 0100 | nominal gain (1.125)  |
|        |                                      |            | 111 1111 | maximum gain (7.5)  |

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.2.17 SUBADDRESS 10H

Table 54 Chrominance control 2; 10H[7:0]

| BIT    | DESCRIPTION  | SYMBOL    | VALUE | FUNCTION   |
|--------|--|-----------|-------|--|
| D[7:6] | fine offset adjustment B - Y component                                 | OFFU[1:0] | 00    | 0 LSB  |
|        |  |           | 01    | 1/ <sub>4</sub> LSB  |
|        |  |           | 10    | ½ LSB  |
|        |  |           | 11    | 3⁄4 LSB  |
| D[5:4] | fine offset adjustment R - Y component                                 | OFFV[1:0] | 00    | 0 LSB  |
|        |  |           | 01    | 1/ <sub>4</sub> LSB  |
|        |  |           | 10    | ½LSB   |
|        |  |           | 11    | <sup>3</sup> ∕ <sub>4</sub> LSB                                  |
| D3     | chrominance bandwidth; see Figs 12 and 13                              | CHBW      | 0     | small  |
|        |  |           | 1     | wide   |
| D[2:0] | combined luminance/chrominance bandwidth adjustment; see Figs 12 to 18 | LCBW[2:0] | 000   | smallest chrominance<br>bandwidth/largest luminance<br>bandwidth |
|        |  |           |       | to   |
|        |  |           | 111   | largest chrominance<br>bandwidth/smallest luminance<br>bandwidth |

#### 15.2.18 SUBADDRESS 11H

Table 55 Mode/delay control; 11H[7:0]

| BIT    | DESCRIPTION                                   | SYMBOL    | VALUE | FUNCTION   |
|--------|---|-----------|-------|--|
| D7     | colour on                                     | COLO      | 0     | automatic colour killer enabled; recommended setting |
|        |   |           | 1     | colour forced on                                     |
| D6     | polarity of RTS1 output signal                | RTP1      | 0     | non-inverted   |
|        |   |           | 1     | inverted   |
| D[5:4] | fine position of HS (steps in 2/LLC)          | HDEL[1:0] | 00    | 0  |
|        |   |           | 01    | 1  |
|        |   |           | 10    | 2  |
|        |   |           | 11    | 3  |
| D3     | polarity of RTS0 output signal                | RTP0      | 0     | non-inverted   |
|        |   |           | 1     | inverted   |
| D[2:0] | luminance delay compensation (steps in 2/LLC) | YDEL[2:0] | 100   | -4   |
|        |   |           | 000   | 0  |
|        |   |           | 011   | 3  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

15.2.19 SUBADDRESS 12H

Table 56 RT signal control: RTS0 output; 12H[3:0]

The polarity of any signal on RTS0 can be inverted via RTP0[11H[3]].

| RTS0 OUTPUT   | RTSE03 | RTSE02 | RTSE01 | RTSE00 |
|---|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 3-state   | 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      |
| Constant LOW  | 0      | 0      | 0      | 1      |
| CREF (13.5 MHz toggling pulse; see Fig.30)  | 0      | 0      | 1      | 0      |
| CREF2 (6.75 MHz toggling pulse; see Fig.30)   | 0      | 0      | 1      | 1      |
| HL; horizontal lock indicator (note 1):   | 0      | 1      | 0      | 0      |
| HL = 0: unlocked  |        |        |        |        |
| HL = 1: locked  |        |        |        |        |
| VL; vertical and horizontal lock:   | 0      | 1      | 0      | 1      |
| VL = 0: unlocked  |        |        |        |        |
| VL = 1: locked  |        |        |        |        |
| DL; vertical and horizontal lock and colour detected:   | 0      | 1      | 1      | 0      |
| DL = 0: unlocked  |        |        |        |        |
| DL = 1: locked  |        |        |        |        |
| Reserved  | 0      | 1      | 1      | 1      |
| HREF, horizontal reference signal; indicates 720 pixels valid data on the expansion port. The positive slope marks the beginning of a new active line. HREF is also generated during the vertical blanking interval (see Fig.30). | 1      | 0      | 0      | 0      |
| HS:   | 1      | 0      | 0      | 1      |
| programmable width in LLC8 steps via HSB[7:0] 06H[7:0] and HSS[7:0] 07H[7:0]  |        |        |        |        |
| fine position adjustment in LLC2 steps via HDEL[1:0] 11H[5:4] (see Fig.30)  |        |        |        |        |
| HQ; HREF gated with VGATE   | 1      | 0      | 1      | 0      |
| Reserved  | 1      | 0      | 1      | 1      |
| V123; vertical sync (see vertical timing diagrams Figs 28 and 29)   | 1      | 1      | 0      | 0      |
| VGATE; programmable via VSTA[8:0] 17H[0] 15H[7:0], VSTO[8:0] 17H[1] 16H[7:0] and VGPS[17H[2]]   | 1      | 1      | 0      | 1      |
| LSBs of the 9-bit ADC's   | 1      | 1      | 1      | 0      |
| FID; position programmable via VSTA[8:0] 17H[0] 15H[7:0]; see vertical timing diagrams Figs 28 and 29   | 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      |

#### Note

- 1. Function of HL is selectable via HLSEL[13H[3]]:
  - a) HLSEL = 0: HL is standard horizontal lock indicator.
  - b) HLSEL = 1: HL is fast horizontal lock indicator (use is not recommended for sources with unstable timebase e.g. VCRs).

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 57 RT signal control: RTS1 output; 12H[7:4]

The polarity of any signal on RTS1 can be inverted via RTP1[11H[6]].

| RTS1 OUTPUT   | RTSE13 | RTSE12 | RTSE11 | RTSE10 |
|---|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 3-state   | 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      |
| Constant LOW  | 0      | 0      | 0      | 1      |
| CREF (13.5 MHz toggling pulse; see Fig.30)  | 0      | 0      | 1      | 0      |
| CREF2 (6.75 MHz toggling pulse; see Fig.30)   | 0      | 0      | 1      | 1      |
| HL; horizontal lock indicator (note 1):   | 0      | 1      | 0      | 0      |
| HL = 0: unlocked  |        |        |        |        |
| HL = 1: locked  |        |        |        |        |
| VL; vertical and horizontal lock:   | 0      | 1      | 0      | 1      |
| VL = 0: unlocked  |        |        |        |        |
| VL = 1: locked  |        |        |        |        |
| DL; vertical and horizontal lock and colour detected:   | 0      | 1      | 1      | 0      |
| DL = 0: unlocked  |        |        |        |        |
| DL = 1: locked  |        |        |        |        |
| Reserved  | 0      | 1      | 1      | 1      |
| HREF, horizontal reference signal; indicates 720 pixels valid data on the expansion port. The positive slope marks the beginning of a new active line. HREF is also generated during the vertical blanking interval (see Fig.30). | 1      | 0      | 0      | 0      |
| HS:   | 1      | 0      | 0      | 1      |
| programmable width in LLC8 steps via HSB[7:0] 06H[7:0] and HSS[7:0] 07H[7:0]  |        |        |        |        |
| fine position adjustment in LLC2 steps via HDEL[1:0] 11H[5:4] (see Fig.30)  |        |        |        |        |
| HQ; HREF gated with VGATE   | 1      | 0      | 1      | 0      |
| Reserved  | 1      | 0      | 1      | 1      |
| V123; vertical sync (see vertical timing diagrams Figs 28 and 29)   | 1      | 1      | 0      | 0      |
| VGATE; programmable via VSTA[8:0] 17H[0] 15H[7:0], VSTO[8:0] 17H[1] 16H[7:0] and VGPS[17H[2]]   | 1      | 1      | 0      | 1      |
| Reserved  | 1      | 1      | 1      | 0      |
| FID; position programmable via VSTA[8:0] 17H[0] 15H[7:0]; see vertical timing diagrams Figs 28 and 29   | 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      |

#### Note

- 1. Function of HL is selectable via HLSEL[13H[3]]:
  - a) HLSEL = 0: HL is standard horizontal lock indicator.
  - b) HLSEL = 1: HL is fast horizontal lock indicator (use is not recommended for sources with unstable timebase e.g. VCRs).

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

15.2.20 SUBADDRESS 13H

Table 58 RT/X-port output control; 13H[7:0]

| BIT    | DESCRIPTION                                  | SYMBOL    | VALUE | FUNCTION  |
|--------|--|-----------|-------|---|
| D7     | RTCO output enable                           | RTCE      | 0     | 3-state   |
|        |  |           | 1     | enabled   |
| D6     | X-port XRH output                            | XRHS      | 0     | HREF (see Fig.30)   |
|        | selection                                    |           | 1     | HS:   |
|        |  |           |       | programmable width in LLC8 steps via HSB[7:0] 06H[7:0] and HSS[7:0] 07H[7:0]  |
|        |  |           |       | fine position adjustment in LLC2 steps via HDEL[1:0] 11H[5:4] (see Fig.30)  |
| D[5:4] |  | XRVS[1:0] | 00    | V123 (see Figs 28 and 29)   |
|        | selection                                    |           | 01    | ITU 656 related field ID (see Figs 28 and 29)   |
|        |  |           | 10    | inverted V123   |
|        |  |           | 11    | inverted ITU 656 related field ID   |
| D3     | horizontal lock indicator                    | HLSEL     | 0     | copy of inverted HLCK status bit (default)  |
|        | selection                                    |           | 1     | fast horizontal lock indicator (for special applications only)  |
| D[2:0] | XPD7 to XPD0 (port                           | OFTS[2:0] | 000   | ITU 656   |
|        | output format selection);<br>see Section 9.5 |           | 001   | ITU 656 like format with modified field blanking according to VGATE position (programmable via VSTA[8:0] 17H[0] 15H[7:0], VSTO[8:0] 17H[1] 16H[7:0] and VGPS[17H[2]])                         |
|        |  |           | 010   | Y-C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> 4 : 2 : 2 8-bit format (no SAV/EAV codes inserted)   |
|        |  |           | 011   | reserved  |
|        |  |           | 100   | multiplexed AD2/AD1 or AD4/AD3 bypass (bits 8 to 1) dependent on mode settings (see Section 15.2.4); if two ADCs are selected AD2/AD4 is output at CREF = 1 and AD1/AD3 is output at CREF = 0 |
|        |  |           |       | 101   |
|        |  |           | 110   | reserved  |
|        |  |           | 111   | multiplexed ADC MSB/LSB bypass dependent on mode settings; only one ADC should be selected at a time; ADx8 to ADx1 are outputs at CREF = 1 and ADx7 to ADx0 are outputs at CREF0              |

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.2.21 SUBADDRESS 14H

Table 59 Analog/ADC/auto/compatibility control; 14H[7:0]

| BIT      | DESCRIPTION  | SYMBOL    | VALUE | FUNCTION  |
|----------|--|-----------|-------|---|
| D7       | compatibility bit for                                    | CM99      | 0     | off (default)   |
|          | SAA7199  |           | 1     | on (to be set <b>only</b> if SAA7199 is used for re-encoding <b>in conjunction with RTCO active</b> ) |
| D6       | update time interval for                                 | UPTCV     | 0     | horizontal update (once per line)   |
|          | AGC value  |           | 1     | vertical update (once per field)  |
| 23H[7]   | analog test select                                       | AOSL[2:0] | 000   | AOUT connected to ground  |
| and      |  |           | 001   | AOUT connected to input AD1   |
| 14H[5:4] |  |           | 010   | AOUT connected to input AD2   |
|          |  |           | 011   | AOUT connected to input AD3   |
|          |  |           | 100   | AOUT connected to input AD4   |
|          |  |           | 101   | reserved  |
|          |  |           | 110   | reserved  |
|          |  |           | 111   | AOUT connected to internal test point BPFOUT  |
| D3       | XTOUT output enable                                      | XTOUTE    | 0     | XTOUT 3-stated  |
|          |  |           | 1     | XTOUT enabled   |
| D2       | automatic chrominance<br>standard detection<br>control 1 | AUTO1     |       | see Section 15.2.15   |
| D[1:0]   | ADC sample clock phase                                   | APCK[1:0] | 00    | application dependent   |
|          | delay  |           | 01    |   |
|          |  |           | 10    |   |
|          |  |           | 11    |   |

15.2.22 SUBADDRESS 15H

**Table 60** VGATE pulse; FID polarity change; 17H[0] and 15H[7:0]

Start of VGATE pulse (LOW-to-HIGH transition) and polarity change of FID pulse, VGPS = 0; see Figs 28 and 29.

| FIE   | LD  | FRAME LINE | DECIMAL | MSB<br>17H[0] | CONTROL BUSINESS |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|------------|---------|---------------|------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
|       |     | COUNTING   | VALUE   | VSTA8         | VSTA7            | VSTA6 | VSTA5 | VSTA4 | VSTA3 | VSTA2 | VSTA1 | VSTA0 |
| 50 Hz | 1st | 1          | 312     | 1             | 0                | 0     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     |
| Ī     | 2nd | 314        |         |               |                  |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| i     | 1st | 2          | 0       | 0             | 0                | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |
| i     | 2nd | 315        |         |               |                  |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| Ī     | 1st | 312        | 310     | 1             | 0                | 0     | 1     | 1     | 0     | 1     | 1     | 1     |
| i     | 2nd | 625        |         |               |                  |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| 60 Hz | 1st | 4          | 262     | 1             | 0                | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 1     | 1     | 0     |
| Ī     | 2nd | 267        |         |               |                  |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| i     | 1st | 5          | 0       | 0             | 0                | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |
| İ     | 2nd | 268        |         |               |                  |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| İ     | 1st | 265        | 260     | 1             | 0                | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 1     | 0     | 1     |
| İ     | 2nd | 3          | ]       |               |                  |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |

comb filter and component video input

Multistandard video decoder with adaptive

**Table 61** VGATE stop; 17H[1] and 16H[7:0]

Stop of VGATE pulse (HIGH-to-LOW transition), VGPS = 0; see Figs 28 and 29.

| FIE   | LD  | FRAME LINE | DECIMAL | MSB<br>17H[1] |       |       | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |  |
|-------|-----|------------|---------|---------------|-------|-------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|
|       |     | COUNTING   | VALUE   | VSTO8         | VST07 | VSTO6 | VSTO5                 | VSTO4 | VSTO3 | VSTO2 | VSTO1 | VSTO0 |  |
| 50 Hz | 1st | 1          | 312     | 1             | 0     | 0     | 1                     | 1     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |
|       | 2nd | 314        |         |               |       |       |                       |       |       |       |       |       |  |
|       | 1st | 2          | 0       | 0             | 0     | 0     | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |
|       | 2nd | 315        |         |               |       |       |                       |       |       |       |       |       |  |
|       | 1st | 312        | 310     | 1             | 0     | 0     | 1                     | 1     | 0     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |
|       | 2nd | 625        |         |               |       |       |                       |       |       |       |       |       |  |
| 60 Hz | 1st | 4          | 262     | 1             | 0     | 0     | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 1     | 1     | 0     |  |
|       | 2nd | 267        |         |               |       |       |                       |       |       |       |       |       |  |
|       | 1st | 5          | 0       | 0             | 0     | 0     | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |
|       | 2nd | 268        | ]       |               |       |       |                       |       |       |       |       |       |  |
|       | 1st | 265        | 260     | 1             | 0     | 0     | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 1     | 0     | 1     |  |
|       | 2nd | 3          | ]       |               |       |       |                       |       |       |       |       |       |  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

15.2.24 SUBADDRESS 17H

Table 62 Miscellaneous/VGATE MSBs; 17H[7:0]

| BIT    | DESCRIPTION               | SYMBOL    | VALUE | FUNCTION                                     |
|--------|---------------------------|-----------|-------|--|
| D7     | LLC output enable         | LLCE      | 0     | enable                                       |
|        |                           |           | 1     | 3-state                                      |
| D6     | LLC2 output enable        | LLC2E     | 0     | enable                                       |
|        |                           |           | 1     | 3-state                                      |
| D[5:3] | standard detection search | LATY[2:0] | 000   | reserved                                     |
|        | loop latency              |           | 001   | one field                                    |
|        |                           |           | 010   | two fields                                   |
|        |                           |           | 011   | three fields; recommended setting            |
|        |                           |           |       | to   |
|        |                           |           | 111   | seven fields                                 |
| D2     | alternative VGATE         | VGPS      | 0     | VGATE position according to Tables 60 and 61 |
|        | position                  |           | 1     | VGATE occurs one line earlier during field 2 |
| D1     | MSB VGATE stop            | VSTO8     |       | see Table 61                                 |
| D0     | MSB VGATE start           | VSTA8     |       | see Table 60                                 |

#### 15.2.25 SUBADDRESS 18H

Table 63 Raw data gain control; RAWG[7:0] 18H[7:0]; see Fig.20

| CAIN                   | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |
|------------------------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|
| GAIN                   | RAWG7                 | RAWG6 | RAWG5 | RAWG4 | RAWG3 | RAWG2 | RAWG1 | RAWG0 |  |  |  |
| 255 (double amplitude) | 0                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |  |  |
| 128 (nominal level)    | 0                     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |
| 0 (off)                | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |

#### 15.2.26 SUBADDRESS 19H

Table 64 Raw data offset control; RAWO[7:0] 19H[7:0]; see Fig.20

| OFFSET   | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |
|----------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|
|          | RAW07                 | RAWO6 | RAW05 | RAWO4 | RAW03 | RAWO2 | RAW01 | RAWO0 |  |  |
| -128 LSB | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |
| 0 LSB    | 1                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |
| +128 LSB | 1                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.2.27 SUBADDRESS 1EH

Table 65 Status byte 1 video decoder; 1EH[6:0]; read only register

| BIT    | DESCRIPTION   | I <sup>2</sup> C-BUS<br>CONTROL BIT | VALUE | FUNCTION                   |
|--------|---|-------------------------------------|-------|----------------------------|
| D6     | status bit for locked horizontal frequency          | HLCK                                | 0     | locked                     |
|        |   |                                     | 1     | unlocked                   |
| D5     | slow time constant active in WIPA mode              | SLTCA                               | 0     | not active                 |
|        |   |                                     | 1     | active                     |
| D4     | gain value for active luminance channel is limited; | GLIMT                               | 0     | not active                 |
|        | maximum (top)                                       |                                     | 1     | active                     |
| D3     | gain value for active luminance channel is limited; | GLIMB                               | 0     | not active                 |
|        | minimum (bottom)                                    |                                     | 1     | active                     |
| D2     | white peak loop is activated                        | WIPA                                | 0     | not active                 |
|        |   |                                     | 1     | active                     |
| D[1:0] | detected colour standard                            | DCSTD[1:0]                          | 00    | no colour<br>(black-white) |
|        |   |                                     | 01    | NTSC                       |
|        |   |                                     | 10    | PAL                        |
|        |   |                                     | 11    | SECAM                      |

### 15.2.28 SUBADDRESS 1FH

Table 66 Status byte 2 video decoder; 1FH[7:5] and 1FH[3:0]; read only register

| BIT | DESCRIPTION  | I <sup>2</sup> C-BUS<br>CONTROL BIT | VALUE | FUNCTION          |
|-----|--|-------------------------------------|-------|-------------------|
| D7  | status bit for interlace detection                     | INTL                                | 0     | non-interlaced    |
|     |  |                                     | 1     | interlaced        |
| D6  | status bit for horizontal and vertical loop            | HLVLN                               | 0     | both loops locked |
|     |  |                                     | 1     | unlocked          |
| D5  | identification bit for detected field frequency        | FIDT                                | 0     | 50 Hz             |
|     |  |                                     | 1     | 60 Hz             |
| D3  | macrovision encoded colour stripe burst type 3 (4 line | TYPE3                               | 0     | not active        |
|     | version) detected                                      |                                     | 1     | active            |
| D2  | macrovision encoded colour stripe burst detected       | COLSTR                              | 0     | not active        |
|     | (any type)   |                                     | 1     | active            |
| D1  | copy protected source detected according to            | COPRO                               | 0     | not active        |
|     | macrovision version up to 7.01                         |                                     | 1     | active            |
| D0  | ready for capture (all internal loops locked)          | RDCAP                               | 0     | not active        |
|     |  |                                     | 1     | active            |

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.3 Programming register RGB/Y-P<sub>B</sub>-P<sub>R</sub> component input processing

#### 15.3.1 SUBADDRESS 23H

Table 67 Analog input control 5 (AICO5); 23H[7:4] and 23H[2:0]

| BIT | DESCRIPTION                            | SYMBOL | VALUE        | FUNCTION  |  |  |
|-----|--|--------|--------------|---|--|--|
| D7  | analog output select                   | AOSL2  |              | see Table 59  |  |  |
| D6  | AD port output enable                  | ADPE   | 0            | AD port is set to 3-state   |  |  |
|     |  |        | 1            | AD port is enabled  |  |  |
| D5  | ADC clock selector                     | EXCLK  | 0            | all ADCs are clocked by the internal generated line-locked clock              |  |  |
|     |  |        | 1            | all ADCs are clocked by the external input clock on CLKEXT                    |  |  |
| D4  | clamping/reference                     | REFA   | 0            | clamping is dependent on HLNRS[03H[6]]  |  |  |
|     | selection for all ADCs                 |        | 1            | reference selection (input signal is pulled into ADC range)                   |  |  |
| D2  | enable external source                 | EXMCE  | 0            | disabled  |  |  |
|     | switch indicator input EXMCLR          |        | 1            | enabled (any slope on EXMCLR input will reset the internal gain control loop) |  |  |
| D1  | static gain control channel 2 sign bit | GAI48  | see Table 69 |   |  |  |
| D0  | static gain control channel 1 sign bit | GAI38  | see Table 68 |   |  |  |

#### 15.3.2 SUBADDRESS 24H

Table 68 Analog input control 6 (AICO6): static gain control channel 3; 23H[0] and 24H[7:0]

|                  | • .  | •                  | ,                     | •     |       |       | -     | -     |       |       |
|------------------|------|--------------------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| DECIMAL<br>VALUE | GAIN | SIGN BIT<br>23H[0] | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
| VALUE            | (dB) | GAI38              | GAI37                 | GAI36 | GAI35 | GAI34 | GAI33 | GAI32 | GAI31 | GAI30 |
| 0                | -3   | 0                  | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |
| 144              | 0    | 0                  | 1                     | 0     | 0     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |
| 145              | 0    | 0                  | 1                     | 0     | 0     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 1     |
| 511              | +6   | 1                  | 1                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |

#### 15.3.3 SUBADDRESS 25H

Table 69 Analog input control 7 (AICO7): static gain control channel 4; 23H[1] and 25H[7:0]

| DECIMAL<br>VALUE | GAIN<br>(dB) | SIGN BIT<br>23H[1] | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |
|------------------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|
| VALUE            | (ub)         | GAI48              | GAI47                 | GAI46 | GAI45 | GAI44 | GAI43 | GAI42 | GAI41 | GAI40 |  |
| 0                | -3           | 0                  | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |
| 144              | 0            | 0                  | 1                     | 0     | 0     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |
| 145              | 0            | 0                  | 1                     | 0     | 0     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 1     |  |
| 511              | +6           | 1                  | 1                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.3.4 SUBADDRESS 29H

Table 70 Component delay/fast switch control; 29H[7:0]

| BIT    | DESCRIPTION             | SYMBOL     | VALUE | FUNCTION  |
|--------|-------------------------|------------|-------|---|
| D7     | fast switch enable      | FSWE       | 0     | disabled  |
|        |                         |            | 1     | pixelwise switching between decoded CVBS signal and component input signal is enabled (should only be used for component sources synchronous to CVBS input) |
| D6     | fast switch input       | FSWI       | 0     | FSW = 0: decoded CVBS signal, FSW = 1: component signal   |
|        | polarity if FSWE = 1    |            | 1     | FSW = 1: decoded CVBS signal, FSW = 0: component signal   |
|        | static selection if     |            | 0     | for modes 00H to 1FH  |
|        | FSWE = 0                |            | 1     | for modes 20H to 3FH  |
| D[5:4] | fast switch input delay | FSWDL[1:0] | 00    | 0 pixel (default)   |
|        | adjustment relative to  |            | 01    | +1 pixel  |
|        | component input signal  |            | 10    | -2 pixel  |
|        | oignai                  |            | 11    | -1 pixel  |
| D3     | component luminance     | CMFI       | 0     | disabled  |
|        | peaking                 |            | 1     | enabled (+1.5 dB at 5 MHz)  |
| D[2:0] | component input delay   | CPDL[2:0]  | 000   | 0 pixel (default)   |
|        | adjustment relative to  |            | 001   | +4 pixel  |
|        | decoded CVBS signal     |            | 010   | +8 pixel  |
|        |                         |            | 011   | +12 pixel   |
|        |                         |            | 100   | -16 pixel   |
|        |                         |            | 101   | -12 pixel   |
|        |                         |            | 110   | -8 pixel  |
|        |                         |            | 111   | -4 pixel  |

#### 15.3.5 SUBADDRESS 2AH

 Table 71
 Luminance brightness control component part; 2AH[7:0]

| OFFSET          | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |
|-----------------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|
| OFFSET          | CBRI7                 | CBRI6 | CBRI5 | CBRI4 | CBRI3 | CBRI2 | CBRI1 | CBRI0 |  |  |
| 255 (bright)    | 1                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |  |
| 128 (ITU level) | 1                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |
| 0 (dark)        | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.3.6 SUBADDRESS 2BH

Table 72 Luminance contrast control component part; 2BH[7:0]

| GAIN                     | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|
|                          | CCON7                 | CCON6 | CCON5 | CCON4 | CCON3 | CCON2 | CCON1 | CCON0 |  |  |
| 1.984 (maximum)          | 0                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |  |
| 1.0 (ITU level)          | 0                     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |
| 0 (luminance off)        | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |
| -1.0 (inverse luminance) | 1                     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |
| -2.0 (inverse luminance) | 1                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |

#### 15.3.7 SUBADDRESS 2CH

Table 73 Chrominance saturation control component part; 2CH[7:0]

| GAIN                       | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|
| GAIN                       | CSAT7                 | CSAT6 | CSAT5 | CSAT4 | CSAT3 | CSAT2 | CSAT1 | CSAT0 |  |  |
| 1.984 (maximum)            | 0                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |  |
| 1.0 (ITU level)            | 0                     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |
| 0 (colour off)             | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |
| -1.0 (inverse chrominance) | 1                     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |
| -2.0 (inverse chrominance) | 1                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |

#### 15.4 Interrupt mask registers

See also Section 9.4

#### 15.4.1 SUBADDRESS 2DH

Table 74 Interrupt mask 1; 2DH[4:2] and 2DH[1]

| BIT | DESCRIPTION  | SYMBOL | VALUE | FUNCTION |
|-----|--|--------|-------|----------|
| D4  | interrupt enable 'VPS signal detected/lost' (corresponding flag: 60H[4])     | MVPSV  | 0     | disabled |
|     |  |        | 1     | enabled  |
| D3  | interrupt enable 'PALplus detected/lost' (corresponding flag: 60H[3])        | MPPV   | 0     | disabled |
|     |  |        | 1     | enabled  |
| D2  | interrupt enable 'closed caption detected/lost' (corresponding flag: 60H[2]) | MCCV   | 0     | disabled |
|     |  |        | 1     | enabled  |
| D0  | interrupt enable 'error output formatter' (corresponding flag: 8FH[2])       | MERROF | 0     | disabled |
|     |  |        | 1     | enabled  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.4.2 SUBADDRESS 2EH

Table 75 Interrupt mask 2; 2EH[6] and 2EH[1:0]

| BIT | DESCRIPTION   | SYMBOL  | VALUE | FUNCTION |
|-----|---|---------|-------|----------|
| D6  | interrupt enable 'horizontal PLL locked/unlocked' (corresponding flag:    | MHLCK   | 0     | disabled |
|     | 1EH[6])   |         | 1     | enabled  |
| D1  | interrupt enable 'colour standard changed 1' (corresponding flag: 1EH[1]) | MDCSTD1 | 0     | disabled |
|     |   |         | 1     | enabled  |
| D0  | interrupt enable 'colour standard changed 0' (corresponding flag: 1EH[0]) | MDCSTD0 | 0     | disabled |
|     |   |         | 1     | enabled  |

#### 15.4.3 SUBADDRESS 2FH

**Table 76** Interrupt mask 3; 2FH[7:5] and 2FH[3:0]

| BIT | DESCRIPTION  | SYMBOL  | VALUE | FUNCTION |
|-----|--|---------|-------|----------|
| D7  | interrupt enable 'interlaced/non-interlaced source' (corresponding flag:       | MINTL   | 0     | disabled |
|     | 1FH[7])  |         | 1     | enabled  |
| D6  | interrupt enable 'horizontal and vertical lock reached/lost' (corresponding    | MHLVLN  | 0     | disabled |
|     | flag: 1FH[6])  |         | 1     | enabled  |
| D5  | interrupt enable 'field frequency has changed' (corresponding flag: 1FH[5])    | MFIDT   | 0     | disabled |
|     |  |         | 1     | enabled  |
| D3  | interrupt enable 'colour stripe type 3 burst detected/lost' (corresponding     | MTYPE3  | 0     | disabled |
|     | flag: 1FH[3])  |         | 1     | enabled  |
| D2  | interrupt enable 'colour stripe burst (any type) detected/lost' (corresponding | MCOLSTR | 0     | disabled |
|     | flag: 1FH[2])  |         | 1     | enabled  |
| D1  | interrupt enable 'copy protected signal found/lost' (corresponding flag:       | MCOPRO  | 0     | disabled |
|     | 1FH[1])  |         | 1     | enabled  |
| D0  | interrupt enable 'ready for capture/not ready' (corresponding flag: 1FH[0])    | MRDCAP  | 0     | disabled |
|     |  |         | 1     | enabled  |

#### 15.5 Programming register audio clock generation

See equations in Section 8.7 and examples in Tables 22 and 23.

#### 15.5.1 SUBADDRESSES 30H TO 32H

Table 77 Audio master clock (AMCLK) cycles per field

| SUBADDRESS |        | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|------------|--------|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 30H        | ACPF7  | ACPF6                 | ACPF5  | ACPF4  | ACPF3  | ACPF2  | ACPF1  | ACPF0  |
| 31H        | ACPF15 | ACPF14                | ACPF13 | ACPF12 | ACPF11 | ACPF10 | ACPF9  | ACPF8  |
| 32H        | _      | _                     | _      | _      | _      | _      | ACPF17 | ACPF16 |

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.5.2 SUBADDRESSES 34H TO 36H

Table 78 Audio master clock (AMCLK) nominal increment

| SUBADDRESS |        | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|------------|--------|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 34H        | ACNI7  | ACNI6                 | ACNI5  | ACNI4  | ACNI3  | ACNI2  | ACNI1  | ACNI0  |
| 35H        | ACNI15 | ACNI14                | ACNI13 | ACNI12 | ACNI11 | ACNI10 | ACNI9  | ACNI8  |
| 36H        | _      | _                     | ACNI21 | ACNI20 | ACNI19 | ACNI18 | ACNI17 | ACNI16 |

#### 15.5.3 SUBADDRESS 38H

Table 79 Clock ratio audio master clock (AMXCLK) to serial bit clock (ASCLK)

| SUBADDRESS |   | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|------------|---|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 38H        | _ | _                     | SDIV5 | SDIV4 | SDIV3 | SDIV2 | SDIV1 | SDIV0 |

#### 15.5.4 SUBADDRESS 39H

Table 80 Clock ratio serial bit clock (ASCLK) to channel select clock (ALRCLK)

| SUBADDRESS |   | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |        |        |        |        |        |        |
|------------|---|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 39H        | _ | _                     | LRDIV5 | LRDIV4 | LRDIV3 | LRDIV2 | LRDIV1 | LRDIV0 |

#### 15.5.5 SUBADDRESS 3AH

Table 81 Audio clock control; 3AH[3:0]

| BIT | DESCRIPTION        | SYMBOL         | VALUE | FUNCTION  |
|-----|--------------------|----------------|-------|---|
| D3  | audio PLL modes    | APLL           | 0     | PLL active, AMCLK is field-locked                           |
|     |                    |                | 1     | PLL open, AMCLK is free-running                             |
| D2  | audio master clock | ter clock AMVR |       | vertical reference pulse is taken from internal decoder     |
|     | vertical reference |                | 1     | vertical reference is taken from XRV input (expansion port) |
| D1  | ALRCLK phase       | LRPH           | 0     | ALRCLK edges triggered by falling edges of ASCLK            |
|     |                    |                | 1     | ALRCLK edges triggered by rising edges of ASCLK             |
| D0  | ASCLK phase        | SCPH           | 0     | ASCLK edges triggered by falling edges of AMCLK             |
|     |                    |                | 1     | ASCLK edges triggered by rising edges of AMCLK              |

#### 15.6 Programming register VBI-data slicer

#### 15.6.1 SUBADDRESS 40H

Table 82 Slicer control 1; 40H[6:4]

| BIT | DESCRIPTION         | SYMBOL | VALUE | FUNCTION   |
|-----|---------------------|--------|-------|--|
| D6  | Hamming check       | HAM_N  | 0     | Hamming check for 2 bytes after framing code, dependent on data type (default) |
|     |                     |        | 1     | no Hamming check   |
| D5  | framing code error  | FCE    | 0     | one framing code error allowed   |
|     |                     |        | 1     | no framing code errors allowed   |
| D4  | amplitude searching | HUNT_N | 0     | amplitude searching active (default)   |
|     |                     |        | 1     | amplitude searching stopped  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.6.2 SUBADDRESSES 41H TO 57H

Table 83 Line control register; LCR2 to LCR24 (41H to 57H)

See Sections 8.3 and 8.5.

| NAME         | DESCRIPTION   | FRAMING CODE       | D[7:4]<br>(41H TO 57H)        | D[3:0]<br>(41H TO 57H)        |
|--------------|---|--------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| NAME         | DESCRIPTION   | FRAMING CODE       | DT[3:0] 62H[3:0]<br>(FIELD 1) | DT[3:0] 62H[3:0]<br>(FIELD 2) |
| WST625       | teletext EuroWST, CCST                                | 27H                | 0000                          | 0000                          |
| CC625        | European closed caption                               | 001                | 0001                          | 0001                          |
| VPS          | video programming service                             | 9951H              | 0010                          | 0010                          |
| WSS          | wide screen signalling bits                           | 1E3C1FH            | 0011                          | 0011                          |
| WST525       | US teletext (WST)                                     | 27H                | 0100                          | 0100                          |
| CC525        | US closed caption (line 21)                           | 001                | 0101                          | 0101                          |
| Test line    | video component signal, VBI region                    | _                  | 0110                          | 0110                          |
| Intercast    | raw data  | _                  | 0111                          | 0111                          |
| General text | teletext  | programmable       | 1000                          | 1000                          |
| VITC625      | VITC/EBU time codes (Europe)                          | programmable       | 1001                          | 1001                          |
| VITC525      | VITC/SMPTE time codes (USA)                           | programmable       | 1010                          | 1010                          |
| Reserved     | reserved  | _                  | 1011                          | 1011                          |
| NABTS        | US NABTS  | _                  | 1100                          | 1100                          |
| Japtext      | MOJI (Japanese)                                       | programmable (A7H) | 1101                          | 1101                          |
| JFS          | Japanese format switch (L20/22)                       | programmable       | 1110                          | 1110                          |
| Active video | video component signal, active video region (default) | -                  | 1111                          | 1111                          |

#### 15.6.3 SUBADDRESS 58H

Table 84 Programmable framing code; slicer set 58H[7:0]

According to Tables 15 and 83.

| FRAMING CODE FOR PROGRAMMABLE DATA TYPES | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |
|--|-----------------------|
| Default value                            | FC[7:0] = 40H         |

#### 15.6.4 SUBADDRESS 59H

Table 85 Horizontal offset for slicer; slicer set 59H and 5BH

| HORIZONTAL OFFSET | CONTROL BITS 5BH[2:0] | CONTROL BITS 59H[7:0] |
|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Recommended value | HOFF[10:8] = 3H       | HOFF[7:0] = 47H       |

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.6.5 SUBADDRESS 5AH

Table 86 Vertical offset for slicer; slicer set 5AH and 5BH

| VERTICAL OFFSET                 | CONTROL BIT 5BH[4] | CONTROL BITS 5AH[7:0] |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| VERTICAL OFFSET                 | VOFF8              | VOFF[7:0]             |
| Minimum value 0                 | 0                  | 00H                   |
| Maximum value 312               | 1                  | 38H                   |
| Value for 50 Hz 625 lines input | 0                  | 03H                   |
| Value for 60 Hz 525 lines input | 0                  | 06H                   |

#### 15.6.6 SUBADDRESS 5BH

**Table 87** Field offset, and MSBs for horizontal and vertical offsets; slicer set 5BH[7:6] See Sections 15.6.4 and 15.6.5 for HOFF[10:8] 5BH[2:0] and VOFF8[5BH[4]].

| BIT | DESCRIPTION  | SYMBOL | VALUE | FUNCTION  |
|-----|--------------|--------|-------|---|
| D7  | field offset | FOFF   | 0     | no modification of internal field indicator (default for 50 Hz 625 lines input sources) |
|     |              |        | 1     | invert field indicator (default for 60 Hz 525 lines input sources)                      |
| D6  | recode       | RECODE | 0     | leave data unchanged (default)  |
|     |              |        | 1     | convert 00H and FFH data bytes into 03H and FCH   |

#### 15.6.7 SUBADDRESS 5DH

Table 88 Header and data identification (DID; ITU 656) code control; slicer set 5DH[7:0]

| BIT    | DESCRIPTION                                   | SYMBOL   | VALUE   | FUNCTION  |
|--------|---|----------|---------|---|
| D7     | field ID and V-blank selection                | FVREF    | 0       | F and V output of slicer is LCR table dependent                               |
|        | for text output (F and V reference selection) |          | 1       | F and V output is taken from decoder real-time signals EVEN_ITU and VBLNK_ITU |
| D[5:0] | default; DID[5:0] = 00H                       | DID[5:0] | 00 0000 | ANC header framing; see Fig.37 and Table 21                                   |
|        | special cases of DID                          |          | 11 1110 | DID[5:0] = 3EH SAV/EAV framing, with FVREF = 1                                |
|        | programming                                   |          | 11 1111 | DID[5:0] = 3FH SAV/EAV framing, with FVREF = 0                                |

#### 15.6.8 SUBADDRESS 5EH

#### Table 89 Sliced data identification (SDID) code; slicer set 5EH[5:0]

| BIT    | DESCRIPTION | SYMBOL    | VALUE | FUNCTION |
|--------|-------------|-----------|-------|----------|
| D[5:0] | SDID codes  | SDID[5:0] | 00H   | default  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 15.6.9 SUBADDRESS 60H

Table 90 Slicer status byte 0; 60H[6:2]; read only register

| BIT | DESCRIPTION          | SYMBOL | VALUE | FUNCTION   |
|-----|----------------------|--------|-------|--|
| D6  | framing code valid   | FC8V   | 0     | no framing code (0 error) in the last frame detected |
|     |                      |        | 1     | framing code with 0 error detected                   |
| D5  | framing code valid   | FC7V   | 0     | no framing code (1 error) in the last frame detected |
|     |                      |        | 1     | framing code with 1 error detected                   |
| D4  | VPS valid            | VPSV   | 0     | no VPS in the last frame                             |
|     |                      |        | 1     | VPS detected   |
| D3  | PALplus valid        | PPV    | 0     | no PALplus in the last frame                         |
|     |                      |        | 1     | PALplus detected                                     |
| D2  | closed caption valid | CCV    | 0     | no closed caption in the last frame                  |
|     |                      |        | 1     | closed caption detected                              |

#### 15.6.10 SUBADDRESSES 61H AND 62H

Table 91 Slicer status byte 1; 61H[5:0] and slicer status byte 2; 62H[7:0]; read only registers

| SUBADDRESS | BIT    | SYMBOL  | DESCRIPTION   |
|------------|--------|---------|---|
| 61H        | D5     | F21_N   | field ID as seen by the VBI slicer; for field 1: D5 = 0 |
|            | D[4:0] | LN[8:4] | line number   |
| 62H        | D[7:4] | LN[3:0] |   |
|            | D[3:0] | DT[3:0] | data type; according to Table 15                        |

#### 15.7 Programming register interfaces and scaler part

#### 15.7.1 SUBADDRESS 80H

Table 92 Global control 1; global set 80H[6:4]

SWRST moved to subaddress 88H[5]; X = don't care.

| TASK ENABLE CONTROL   |   | CONTROL BITS D6 TO D4 |     |  |  |
|---|---|-----------------------|-----|--|--|
|   |   | TEB                   | TEA |  |  |
| Task of register set A is disabled                                | Х | Х                     | 0   |  |  |
| Task of register set A is enabled                                 | Х | Х                     | 1   |  |  |
| Task of register set B is disabled                                | Х | 0                     | Х   |  |  |
| Task of register set B is enabled                                 | Х | 1                     | Х   |  |  |
| The scaler window defines the F and V timing of the scaler output | 0 | Х                     | Х   |  |  |
| VBI-data slicer defines the F and V timing of the scaler output   | 1 | Х                     | Х   |  |  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 93 Global control 1; global set 80H[3:0]

X = don't care.

| I-PORT AND SCALER BACK-END CLOCK SELECTION   | CON   | CONTROL BITS D3 TO D0 |       |       |  |
|--|-------|-----------------------|-------|-------|--|
| I-FORT AND SCALER BACK-END CLOCK SELECTION   | ICKS3 | ICKS2                 | ICKS1 | ICKS0 |  |
| ICLK output and back-end clock is line-locked clock LLC from decoder                       | Х     | Х                     | 0     | 0     |  |
| ICLK output and back-end clock is XCLK from X-port   | Х     | Х                     | 0     | 1     |  |
| ICLK output is LLC and back-end clock is LLC2 clock  | Х     | X <sup>(1)</sup>      | 1     | 0     |  |
| Back-end clock is the ICLK input   | Х     | Х                     | 1     | 1     |  |
| IDQ pin carries the data qualifier   | Х     | 0                     | Х     | Х     |  |
| IDQ pin carries a gated back-end clock (DQ AND CLK)  | Х     | 1                     | Х     | Х     |  |
| IDQ generation only for valid data   | 0     | Х                     | Х     | Х     |  |
| IDQ qualifies valid data inside the scaling region and all data outside the scaling region | 1     | Х                     | Х     | Х     |  |

#### Note

1. Although the ICLKO I/O is independent of ICKS2 and ICKS3, this selection can only be used if ICKS2 = 1.

#### 15.7.2 SUBADDRESSES 83H TO 87H

Table 94 X-port I/O enable and output clock phase control; global set 83H[5:4]

| OUTPUT CLOCK PHASE CONTROL                             | CONTROL BI | CONTROL BITS D5 AND D4 |  |  |  |
|--|------------|------------------------|--|--|--|
| OUTPUT CLOCK PHASE CONTROL                             | XPCK1      | XPCK0                  |  |  |  |
| XCLK default output phase, recommended value           | 0          | 0                      |  |  |  |
| XCLK output inverted                                   | 0          | 1                      |  |  |  |
| XCLK phase shifted by approximately 3 ns               | 1          | 0                      |  |  |  |
| XCLK output inverted and shifted by approximately 3 ns | 1          | 1                      |  |  |  |

Table 95 X-port I/O enable and output clock phase control; global set 83H[2:0]

X = don't care.

| X-PORT I/O ENABLE   |      | CONTROL BITS D2 TO D0 |      |  |  |
|---|------|-----------------------|------|--|--|
| A-FORT I/O ENABLE   | XRQT | XPE1                  | XPE0 |  |  |
| X-port output is disabled by software   | Х    | 0                     | 0    |  |  |
| X-port output is enabled by software  | Х    | 0                     | 1    |  |  |
| X-port output is enabled by pin XTRI at logic 0   | Х    | 1                     | 0    |  |  |
| X-port output is enabled by pin XTRI at logic 1   | Х    | 1                     | 1    |  |  |
| XRDY output signal is A/B task flag from event handler (A = 1)  | 0    | Х                     | Х    |  |  |
| XRDY output signal is ready signal from scaler path (XRDY = 1 means the SAA7118 is ready to receive data) | 1    | Х                     | Х    |  |  |

**SAA7118** 

Table 96 I-port signal definitions; global set 84H[7:6] and 86H[5]

| I-PORT SIGNAL DEFINITIONS   |       | CONTROL BITS |       |  |
|---|-------|--------------|-------|--|
|   |       | 84H          | [7:6] |  |
|   | IDG02 | IDG01        | IDG00 |  |
| IGP0 is output field ID, as defined by OFIDC[90H[6]]                                | 0     | 0            | 0     |  |
| IGP0 is A/B task flag, as defined by CONLH[90H[7]]                                  | 0     | 0            | 1     |  |
| IGP0 is sliced data flag, framing the sliced VBI-data at the I-port                 | 0     | 1            | 0     |  |
| IGP0 is set to logic 0 (default polarity)   | 0     | 1            | 1     |  |
| IGP0 is the output FIFO almost filled flag  | 1     | 0            | 0     |  |
| IGP0 is the output FIFO overflow flag   | 1     | 0            | 1     |  |
| IGP0 is the output FIFO almost full flag, level to be programmed in subaddress 86H  | 1     | 1            | 0     |  |
| IGP0 is the output FIFO almost empty flag, level to be programmed in subaddress 86H | 1     | 1            | 1     |  |

Table 97 I-port signal definitions; global set 84H[5:4] and 86H[4]

|   | CONTROL BITS |              |       |  |
|---|--------------|--------------|-------|--|
| I-PORT SIGNAL DEFINITIONS   |              | 86H[4] 84H[5 |       |  |
|   | IDG12        | IDG11        | IDG10 |  |
| IGP1 is output field ID, as defined by OFIDC[90H[6]]                                | 0            | 0            | 0     |  |
| IGP1 is A/B task flag, as defined by CONLH[90H[7]]                                  | 0            | 0            | 1     |  |
| IGP1 is sliced data flag, framing the sliced VBI-data at the I-port                 | 0            | 1            | 0     |  |
| IGP1 is set to logic 0 (default polarity)   | 0            | 1            | 1     |  |
| IGP1 is the output FIFO almost filled flag  | 1            | 0            | 0     |  |
| IGP1 is the output FIFO overflow flag   | 1            | 0            | 1     |  |
| IGP1 is the output FIFO almost full flag, level to be programmed in subaddress 86H  | 1            | 1            | 0     |  |
| IGP1 is the output FIFO almost empty flag, level to be programmed in subaddress 86H | 1            | 1            | 1     |  |

**Table 98** I-port output signal definitions; global set 84H[3:0] X = don't care.

| I-PORT OUTPUT SIGNAL DEFINITIONS  | CON  | CONTROL BITS D3 TO D0 |      |      |  |
|---|------|-----------------------|------|------|--|
| I-PORT OUTFUT SIGNAL DEFINITIONS  | IDV1 | IDV0                  | IDH1 | IDH0 |  |
| IGPH is a H-gate signal, framing the scaler output  | Х    | Х                     | 0    | 0    |  |
| IGPH is an extended H-gate (framing H-gate during scaler output and scaler input H-reference outside the scaler window) | Х    | Х                     | 0    | 1    |  |
| IGPH is a horizontal trigger pulse, on active going edge of H-gate  | X    | Х                     | 1    | 0    |  |
| IGPH is a horizontal trigger pulse, on active going edge of extended H-gate   | Х    | Х                     | 1    | 1    |  |
| IGPV is a V-gate signal, framing scaled output lines  | 0    | 0                     | Х    | Х    |  |
| IGPV is the V-reference signal from scaler input  | 0    | 1                     | Х    | Х    |  |
| IGPV is a vertical trigger pulse, derived from V-gate   | 1    | 0                     | Х    | Х    |  |
| IGPV is a vertical trigger pulse derived from input V-reference   | 1    | 1                     | Х    | Х    |  |

**SAA7118** 

**Table 99** X-port signal definitions text slicer; global set 85H[7:5] X = don't care.

| X-PORT SIGNAL DEFINITIONS TEXT SLICER   | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D5 |       |      |  |
|---|-----------------------|-------|------|--|
| X-FORT SIGNAL DEFINITIONS TEXT SLICER   | ISWP1                 | ISWP0 | ILLV |  |
| Video data limited to range 1 to 254  | Х                     | Х     | 0    |  |
| Video data limited to range 8 to 247  | Х                     | Х     | 1    |  |
| Dword byte swap, influences serial output timing D0 D1 D2 D3 $\Rightarrow$ FF 00 00 SAV C <sub>B</sub> 0 Y0 C <sub>R</sub> 0 Y1 | 0                     | 0     | Х    |  |
| D1 D0 D3 D2 $\Rightarrow$ 00 FF SAV 00 Y0 C <sub>B</sub> 0 Y1 C <sub>R</sub> 0  | 0                     | 1     | Х    |  |
| D2 D3 D0 D1 $\Rightarrow$ 00 SAV FF 00 C <sub>R</sub> 0 Y1 C <sub>B</sub> 0 Y0  | 1                     | 0     | Х    |  |
| D3 D2 D1 D0 $\Rightarrow$ SAV 00 00 FF Y1 C <sub>R</sub> 0 Y0 C <sub>B</sub> 0  | 1                     | 1     | Х    |  |

**Table 100** I-port reference signal polarities; global set 85H[4:0] X = don't care.

| I-PORT REFERENCE SIGNAL POLARITIES    | CONTROL BITS D4 TO D0 |       |      |      |      |  |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------|------|------|------|--|
|                                       | IGP0P                 | IGP1P | IGVP | IGHP | IDQP |  |
| IDQ at default polarity (1 = active)  | Х                     | Х     | Х    | Х    | 0    |  |
| IDQ is inverted                       | Х                     | Х     | Х    | Х    | 1    |  |
| IGPH at default polarity (1 = active) | Х                     | Х     | Х    | 0    | Х    |  |
| IGPH is inverted                      | Х                     | Х     | Х    | 1    | Х    |  |
| IGPV at default polarity (1 = active) | Х                     | Х     | 0    | Х    | Х    |  |
| IGPV is inverted                      | Х                     | Х     | 1    | Х    | Х    |  |
| IGP1 at default polarity              | Х                     | 0     | Х    | Х    | Х    |  |
| IGP1 is inverted                      | Х                     | 1     | Х    | Х    | Х    |  |
| IGP0 at default polarity              | 0                     | Х     | Х    | Х    | Х    |  |
| IGP0 is inverted                      | 1                     | Х     | Х    | Х    | Х    |  |

**Table 101** I-port FIFO flag control and arbitration; global set 86H[7:4] X = don't care.

| FUNCTION   | С     | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D4 |       |       |  |  |
|--|-------|-----------------------|-------|-------|--|--|
|  | VITX1 | VITX0                 | IDG02 | IDG12 |  |  |
| See subaddress 84H: IDG11 and IDG10                    | X     | Х                     | Х     | 0     |  |  |
|  | X     | Х                     | Х     | 1     |  |  |
| See subaddress 84H: IDG01 and IDG00                    | X     | Х                     | 0     | Х     |  |  |
|  | X     | Х                     | 1     | Х     |  |  |
| I-port signal definitions                              | ·     |                       |       |       |  |  |
| I-port data output inhibited                           | 0     | 0                     | Х     | Х     |  |  |
| Only video data is transferred                         | 0     | 1                     | Х     | Х     |  |  |
| Only text data is transferred (no EAV, SAV will occur) | 1     | 0                     | Х     | Х     |  |  |
| Text and video data is transferred, text has priority  | 1     | 1                     | Х     | Х     |  |  |

**SAA7118** 

**Table 102** I-port FIFO flag control and arbitration; global set 86H[3:0] X = don't care.

| I-PORT FIFO FLAG CONTROL AND ARBITRATION | CONTROL BITS D3 TO D0 |      |      |      |  |
|--|-----------------------|------|------|------|--|
| I-PORT FIFO FLAG CONTROL AND ARBITRATION | FFL1                  | FFL0 | FEL1 | FEL0 |  |
| FAE FIFO flag almost empty level         |                       |      |      |      |  |
| <16 Dwords                               | X                     | X    | 0    | 0    |  |
| <8 Dwords                                | X                     | X    | 0    | 1    |  |
| <4 Dwords                                | X                     | X    | 1    | 0    |  |
| 0 Dwords                                 | X                     | X    | 1    | 1    |  |
| FAF FIFO flag almost full level          |                       |      |      |      |  |
| ≥16 Dwords                               | 0                     | 0    | X    | X    |  |
| ≥24 Dwords                               | 0                     | 1    | X    | X    |  |
| ≥28 Dwords                               | 1                     | 0    | X    | Х    |  |
| 32 Dwords                                | 1                     | 1    | X    | Х    |  |

Table 103 I-port I/O enable, output clock and gated clock phase control; global set 87H[7:4]

| OUTPUT CLOCK AND GATED CLOCK PHASE CONTROL  |   | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D4 <sup>(1)</sup> |       |       |  |  |
|---|---|--------------------------------------|-------|-------|--|--|
|   |   | IPCK2 <sup>(2)</sup>                 | IPCK1 | IPCK0 |  |  |
| ICLK default output phase   | Х | Х                                    | 0     | 0     |  |  |
| ICLK phase shifted by $\frac{1}{2}$ clock cycle $\Rightarrow$ recommended for ICKS1 = 1 and ICKS0 = 0 (subaddress 80H)        | Х | Х                                    | 0     | 1     |  |  |
| ICLK phase shifted by approximately 3 ns  | Х | Х                                    | 1     | 0     |  |  |
| ICLK phase shifted by $\frac{1}{2}$ clock cycle + approximately 3 ns $\Rightarrow$ alternatively to setting '01'              | Х | Х                                    | 1     | 1     |  |  |
| IDQ = gated clock default output phase  | 0 | 0                                    | Х     | Х     |  |  |
| IDQ = gated clock phase shifted by $\frac{1}{2}$ clock cycle $\Rightarrow$ recommended for gated clock output                 | 0 | 1                                    | Х     | Х     |  |  |
| IDQ = gated clock phase shifted by approximately 3 ns   | 1 | 0                                    | Х     | Х     |  |  |
| IDQ = gated clock phase shifted by $\frac{1}{2}$ clock cycle + approximately 3 ns $\Rightarrow$ alternatively to setting '01' | 1 | 1                                    | Х     | Х     |  |  |

### **Notes**

- 1. X = don't care.
- 2. IPCK3 and IPCK2 only affects the gated clock (subaddress 80H, bit ICKS2 = 1).

Table 104 I-port I/O enable, output clock and gated clock phase control; global set 87H[1:0]

| I-PORT I/O ENABLE                               | CONTROL BITS D1 AND D0 |      |  |  |
|---|------------------------|------|--|--|
| I-PORT VO ENABLE                                | IPE1                   | IPE0 |  |  |
| I-port output is disabled by software           | 0                      | 0    |  |  |
| I-port output is enabled by software            | 0                      | 1    |  |  |
| I-port output is enabled by pin ITRI at logic 0 | 1                      | 0    |  |  |
| I-port output is enabled by pin ITRI at logic 1 | 1                      | 1    |  |  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 15.7.3 SUBADDRESS 88H

Table 105 ADC-port control; global set 88H[7:4]

| ADC-PORT OUTPUT CONTROL/START-UP CONTROL  | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D4 <sup>(1)</sup> |       |                      |       |  |
|---|--------------------------------------|-------|----------------------|-------|--|
| ADC-FORT OUTFUT CONTROL/START-OF CONTROL  | DOSL1                                | DOSL0 | SWRST <sup>(2)</sup> | DPROG |  |
| DPROG = 0 after reset   | Х                                    | Х     | Х                    | 0     |  |
| DPROG = 1 can be used to assign that the device has been programmed; this bit can be monitored in the scalers status byte, bit PRDON; if DPROG was set to logic 1 and PRDON status bit shows a logic 0 a power-up or start-up fail has occurred | X                                    | Х     | X                    | 1     |  |
| Scaler path is reset to its idle state, software reset  | X                                    | X     | 0                    | Χ     |  |
| Scaler is switched back to operation  | Х                                    | Х     | 1                    | Χ     |  |
| Digitized ADC1 signal is fed to port ADP[8:0]   | 0                                    | 0     | Х                    | Х     |  |
| Digitized ADC2 signal is fed to port ADP[8:0]   | 0                                    | 1     | Х                    | Х     |  |
| Digitized ADC3 signal is fed to port ADP[8:0]   | 1                                    | 0     | Х                    | Х     |  |
| Digitized ADC4 signal is fed to port ADP[8:0]   | 1                                    | 1     | Х                    | Х     |  |

### **Notes**

- 1. X = don't care.
- 2. Bit SWRST is now located here.

**Table 106** Power save control; global set 88H[3] and 88H[1:0] X = don't care.

| POWER SAVE CONTROL   | CONTROL BITS D3, D1 AND D0 |      |      |  |  |
|--|----------------------------|------|------|--|--|
| FOWER SAVE CONTROL   |                            | SLM1 | SLM0 |  |  |
| Decoder and VBI slicer are in operational mode   | Х                          | Х    | 0    |  |  |
| Decoder and VBI slicer are in power-down mode; scaler only operates, if scaler input and ICLK source is the X-port (refer to subaddresses 80H and 91H/C1H) | Х                          | Х    | 1    |  |  |
| Scaler is in operational mode  | Х                          | 0    | Х    |  |  |
| Scaler is in power-down mode; scaler in power-down stops I-port output   | Х                          | 1    | Х    |  |  |
| Audio clock generation active  | 0                          | Х    | Х    |  |  |
| Audio clock generation in power-down and output disabled   | 1                          | Х    | Х    |  |  |

**SAA7118** 

### 15.7.4 SUBADDRESS 8FH

Table 107 Status information scaler part; 8FH[7:0]; read only register

| віт | I <sup>2</sup> C-BUS<br>STATUS BIT | FUNCTION <sup>(1)</sup>   |
|-----|------------------------------------|---|
| D7  | XTRI                               | status on input pin XTRI, if not used for 3-state control, usable as hardware flag for software use   |
| D6  | ITRI                               | status on input pin ITRI, if not used for 3-state control, usable as hardware flag for software use   |
| D5  | FFIL                               | status of the internal 'FIFO almost filled' flag  |
| D4  | FFOV                               | status of the internal 'FIFO overflow' flag   |
| D3  | PRDON                              | copy of bit DPROG, can be used to detect power-up and start-up fails  |
| D2  | ERROF                              | error flag of scalers output formatter, normally set, if the output processing needs to be interrupted, due to input/output data rate conflicts, e.g. if output data rate is much too low and all internal FIFO capacity used |
| D1  | FIDSCI                             | status of the field sequence ID at the scalers input  |
| D0  | FIDSCO                             | status of the field sequence ID at the scalers output, scaler processing dependent  |

#### Note

1. Status information is unsynchronized and shows the actual status at the time of I<sup>2</sup>C-bus read.

### 15.7.5 SUBADDRESSES 90H AND C0H

**Table 108** Task handling control; register set A [90H[7:6]] and B [C0H[7:6]] X = don't care.

| EVENT HANDLER CONTROL  | CONTROL BITS D7 AND D6 |       |  |  |
|--|------------------------|-------|--|--|
| EVENT HANDLER CONTROL  | CONLH                  | OFIDC |  |  |
| Output field ID is field ID from scaler input  | X                      | 0     |  |  |
| Output field ID is task status flag, which changes every time an selected task is activated (not synchronized to input field ID) | X                      | 1     |  |  |
| Scaler SAV/EAV byte bit D7 and task flag = 1, default  | 0                      | X     |  |  |
| Scaler SAV/EAV byte bit D7 and task flag = 0   | 1                      | X     |  |  |

Table 109 Task handling control; register set A [90H[5:3]] and B [C0H[5:3]]

| EVENT HANDLER CONTROL                                  | CONTROL BITS D5 TO D3 |       |       |  |  |
|--|-----------------------|-------|-------|--|--|
| EVENT HANDLER CONTROL                                  |                       | FSKP1 | FSKP0 |  |  |
| Active task is carried out directly                    | 0                     | 0     | 0     |  |  |
| 1 field is skipped before active task is carried out   | 0                     | 0     | 1     |  |  |
| fields are skipped before active task is carried out   |                       |       |       |  |  |
| 6 fields are skipped before active task is carried out | 1                     | 1     | 0     |  |  |
| 7 fields are skipped before active task is carried out | 1                     | 1     | 1     |  |  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

**Table 110** Task handling control; register set A [90H[2:0]] and B [C0H[2:0]] X = don't care.

| EVENT HANDLER CONTROL  | CONTROL BITS D2 TO D0 |       |       |  |
|--|-----------------------|-------|-------|--|
| EVENT HANDLER CONTROL  |                       | STRC1 | STRC0 |  |
| Event handler triggers immediately after finishing a task                    | Х                     | 0     | 0     |  |
| Event handler triggers with next V-sync                                      | Х                     | 0     | 1     |  |
| Event handler triggers with field ID = 0                                     | Х                     | 1     | 0     |  |
| Event handler triggers with field ID = 1                                     | Х                     | 1     | 1     |  |
| If active task is finished, handling is taken over by the next task          | 0                     | Х     | Х     |  |
| Active task is repeated once, before handling is taken over by the next task | 1                     | Х     | Х     |  |

### 15.7.6 SUBADDRESSES 91H TO 93H

**Table 111** X-port formats and configuration; register set A [91H[7:3]] and B [C1H[7:3]] X = don't care.

| SCALER INPUT FORMAT AND CONFIGURATION SOURCE  | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D3 |       |        |        |       |
|---|-----------------------|-------|--------|--------|-------|
| SELECTION   | CONLV                 | HLDFV | SCSRC1 | SCSRC0 | SCRQE |
| Only if XRQT[83H[2]] = 1: scaler input source reacts on SAA7118 request   | Х                     | Х     | Х      | Х      | 0     |
| Scaler input source is a continuous data stream, which cannot be interrupted (must be logic 1, if SAA7118 decoder part is source of scaler or XRQT[83H[2]] = 0) | Х                     | X     | X      | X      | 1     |
| Scaler input source is data from decoder, data type is provided according to Table 15   | Х                     | Х     | 0      | 0      | Х     |
| Scaler input source is Y-C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> data from X-port  | Х                     | Х     | 0      | 1      | Х     |
| Scaler input source is raw digital CVBS from selected analog channel, for backward compatibility only, further use is not recommended                           | Х                     | Х     | 1      | 0      | Х     |
| Scaler input source is raw digital CVBS (or 16-bit Y + C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> , if no 16-bit outputs are active) from X-port                            | Х                     | Х     | 1      | 1      | Х     |
| SAV/EAV code bits D6 and D5 (F and V) may change between SAV and EAV  | Х                     | 0     | Х      | Х      | Х     |
| SAV/EAV code bits D6 and D5 (F and V) are synchronized to scalers output line start   | Х                     | 1     | Х      | Х      | Х     |
| SAV/EAV code bit D5 (V) and V-gate on pin IGPV as generated by the internal processing; see Fig.43  | 0                     | Х     | Х      | Х      | Х     |
| SAV/EAV code bit D5 (V) and V-gate are inverted   | 1                     | Х     | Х      | Х      | Х     |

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 112 X-port formats and configuration; register set A [91H[2:0]] and B [C1H[2:0]]

| SCALER INPUT FORMAT AND CONFIGURATION FORMAT                             | CONTROL BITS D2 TO D0 <sup>(1)</sup> |                     |      |  |  |
|--|--------------------------------------|---------------------|------|--|--|
| CONTROL  | FSC2 <sup>(2)</sup>                  | FSC1 <sup>(2)</sup> | FSC0 |  |  |
| Input is Y-C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> 4 : 2 : 2 like sampling scheme | Х                                    | Х                   | 0    |  |  |
| Input is Y-C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> 4:1:1 like sampling scheme     | X                                    | X                   | 1    |  |  |
| Chroma is provided every line, default                                   | 0                                    | 0                   | Х    |  |  |
| Chroma is provided every 2nd line  | 0                                    | 1                   | Х    |  |  |
| Chroma is provided every 3rd line  | 1                                    | 0                   | Х    |  |  |
| Chroma is provided every 4th line  | 1                                    | 1                   | X    |  |  |

### **Notes**

- 1. X = don't care.
- 2. FSC2 and FSC1 only to be used, if X-port input source don't provide chroma information for every input line. X-port input stream must contain dummy chroma bytes.

**Table 113** X-port input reference signal definitions; register set A [92H[7:4]] and B [C2H[7:4]] X = don't care.

| X-PORT INPUT REFERENCE SIGNAL DEFINITIONS  | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D4 |      |      |      |  |
|--|-----------------------|------|------|------|--|
| X-PORT INPUT REFERENCE SIGNAL DEFINITIONS  | XFDV                  | XFDH | XDV1 | XDV0 |  |
| Rising edge of XRV input and decoder V123 is vertical reference                  | Х                     | Х    | Х    | 0    |  |
| Falling edge of XRV input and decoder V123 is vertical reference                 | Х                     | Х    | Х    | 1    |  |
| XRV is a V-sync or V-gate signal   | Х                     | Х    | 0    | Х    |  |
| XRV is a frame sync, V-pulses are generated internally on both edges of FS input | Х                     | Х    | 1    | Х    |  |
| X-port field ID is state of XRH at reference edge on XRV (defined by XFDV)       | Х                     | 0    | Х    | Х    |  |
| Field ID (decoder and X-port field ID) is inverted                               | Х                     | 1    | Х    | Х    |  |
| Reference edge for field detection is falling edge of XRV                        | 0                     | Х    | Х    | Х    |  |
| Reference edge for field detection is rising edge of XRV                         | 1                     | Х    | Х    | Х    |  |

**Table 114** X-port input reference signal definitions; register set A [92H[3:0]] and B [C2H[3:0]] X = don't care.

| X-PORT INPUT REFERENCE SIGNAL DEFINITIONS             | CONTROL BITS D3 TO D0 |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|-----------------------|-----|-----|------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| A-PORT INPUT REFERENCE SIGNAL DEFINITIONS             | XCODE                 | XDH | XDQ | XCKS |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XCLK input clock and XDQ input qualifier are needed   | Х                     | Х   | Х   | 0    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Data rate is defined by XCLK only, no XDQ signal used | Х                     | Χ   | Х   | 1    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Data are qualified at XDQ input at logic 1            | Х                     | Χ   | 0   | Х    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Data are qualified at XDQ input at logic 0            | Х                     | Х   | 1   | Х    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Rising edge of XRH input is horizontal reference      | Х                     | 0   | Х   | Х    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Falling edge of XRH input is horizontal reference     | Х                     | 1   | Х   | Х    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Reference signals are taken from XRH and XRV          | 0                     | Х   | Х   | Х    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Reference signals are decoded from EAV and SAV        | 1                     | Х   | Х   | Х    |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

**Table 115** I-port output format and configuration; register set A [93H[7:5]] and B [C3H[7:5]] X = don't care.

| I-PORT OUTPUT FORMATS AND CONFIGURATION  | CONTR | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D5 |      |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|-------|-----------------------|------|--|--|--|--|--|
| I-FORT OUTFUT FORMATS AND CONFIGURATION  | ICODE | I8_16                 | FYSK |  |  |  |  |  |
| All lines will be output   | Х     | Х                     | 0    |  |  |  |  |  |
| Skip the number of leading Yonly lines, as defined by FOI1 and FOI0                              | Х     | Х                     | 1    |  |  |  |  |  |
| Dwords are transferred byte wise, see subaddress 85H bits ISWP1 and ISWP0                        | Х     | 0                     | Х    |  |  |  |  |  |
| Dwords are transferred 16-bit word wise via IPD and HPD, see subaddress 85H bits ISWP1 and ISWP0 | Х     | 1                     | Х    |  |  |  |  |  |
| No ITU 656 like SAV/EAV codes are available  | 0     | Х                     | Х    |  |  |  |  |  |
| ITU 656 like SAV/EAV codes are inserted in the output data stream, framed by a qualifier         | 1     | Х                     | Х    |  |  |  |  |  |

**Table 116** I-port output format and configuration; register set A [93H[4:0]] and B [C3H[4:0]] X = don't care.

| L BODT OUTDUT FORMATS AND CONFIGURATION  |      | CONTR | OL BITS D | 4 TO D0 |      |
|--|------|-------|-----------|---------|------|
| I-PORT OUTPUT FORMATS AND CONFIGURATION  | FOI1 | FOI0  | FSI2      | FSI1    | FSI0 |
| 4:2:2 Dword formatting   | Х    | Х     | 0         | 0       | 0    |
| 4:1:1 Dword formatting   | Х    | Х     | 0         | 0       | 1    |
| 4 : 2 : 0, only every 2nd line Y + C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> output, in between Y only output | Х    | Х     | 0         | 1       | 0    |
| 4 : 1 : 0, only every 4th line Y + C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> output, in between Y only output | Х    | Х     | 0         | 1       | 1    |
| Yonly  | Х    | Х     | 1         | 0       | 0    |
| Not defined  | Х    | Х     | 1         | 0       | 1    |
| Not defined  | Х    | Х     | 1         | 1       | 0    |
| Not defined  | Х    | Х     | 1         | 1       | 1    |
| No leading Yonly line, before 1st Y + C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> line is output                | 0    | 0     | Х         | Х       | Х    |
| 1 leading Y only line, before 1st Y + C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> line is output                | 0    | 1     | Х         | Х       | Х    |
| 2 leading Y only lines, before 1st Y + C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> line is output               | 1    | 0     | Х         | Х       | Х    |
| 3 leading Y only lines, before 1st Y + C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> line is output               | 1    | 1     | Х         | Х       | Х    |

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 15.7.7 SUBADDRESSES 94H TO 9BH

Table 117 Horizontal input window start; register set A [94H[7:0]; 95H[3:0]] and B [C4H[7:0]; C5H[3:0]]

| HORIZONTAL INPUT   |                              | CONTROL BITS |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|--|------------------------------|--------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| ACQUISITION WINDOW DEFINITION OFFSET IN  | A [95H[3:0]]<br>B [C5H[3:0]] |              |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| X (HORIZONTAL) DIRECTION <sup>(1)</sup>  | XO11                         | XO10         | XO9 | XO8 | X07 | XO6 | XO5 | XO4 | хоз | XO2 | XO1 | XO0 |
| A minimum of '2' should be kept, due to a line counting mismatch   | 0                            | 0            | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 1   | 0   |
| Odd offsets are changing the C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> sequence in the output stream to C <sub>R</sub> -C <sub>B</sub> sequence | 0                            | 0            | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 1   | 1   |
| Maximum possible pixel offset = 4095   | 1                            | 1            | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   |

#### Note

Reference for counting are luminance samples.

Table 118 Horizontal input window length; register set A [96H[7:0]; 97H[3:0]] and B [C6H[7:0]; C7H[3:0]]

| HORIZONTAL INPUT  |                              |      |     |     | CC  | NTRO | L BITS | 3                  |     |     |     |     |
|---|------------------------------|------|-----|-----|-----|------|--------|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| ACQUISITION WINDOW DEFINITION INPUT WINDOW LENGTH IN X (HORIZONTAL) | A [97H[3:0]]<br>B [C7H[3:0]] |      |     |     |     |      | _      | H[7:0]]<br>H[7:0]] |     |     |     |     |
| DIRECTION <sup>(1)</sup>  | XS11                         | XS10 | XS9 | XS8 | XS7 | XS6  | XS5    | XS4                | XS3 | XS2 | XS1 | XS0 |
| No output   | 0                            | 0    | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0    | 0      | 0                  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |
| Odd lengths are allowed, but will be rounded up to even lengths     | 0                            | 0    | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0    | 0      | 0                  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 1   |
| Maximum possible number of input pixels = 4095                      | 1                            | 1    | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1    | 1      | 1                  | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   |

### Note

1. Reference for counting are luminance samples.

Table 119 Vertical input window start; register set A [98H[7:0]; 99H[3:0]] and B [C8H[7:0]; C9H[3:0]]

|  | CONTROL BITS                 |      |     |     |                              |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|--|------------------------------|------|-----|-----|------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| VERTICAL INPUT ACQUISITION WINDOW DEFINITION OFFSET IN Y (VERTICAL) DIRECTION(1) | A [99H[3:0]]<br>B [C9H[3:0]] |      |     |     | A [98H[7:0]]<br>B [C8H[7:0]] |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| (  | YO11                         | YO10 | YO9 | YO8 | Y07                          | YO6 | YO5 | YO4 | YO3 | YO2 | YO1 | YO0 |
| Line offset = 0  | 0                            | 0    | 0   | 0   | 0                            | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |
| Line offset = 1  | 0                            | 0    | 0   | 0   | 0                            | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 1   |
| Maximum line offset = 4095   | 1                            | 1    | 1   | 1   | 1                            | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   |

### Note

1. For trigger condition: STRC[1:0] 90H[1:0] = 00; YO + YS > (number of input lines per field – 2), will result in field dropping. Other trigger conditions: YO > (number of input lines per field – 2), will result in field dropping.

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 120 Vertical input window length; register set A [9AH[7:0]; 9BH[3:0]] and B [CAH[7:0]; CBH[3:0]]

| VERTICAL INPUT ACQUISITION                    |                              |      |     |     | СО                           | NTRO | L BITS | 3   |     |     |     |     |
|---|------------------------------|------|-----|-----|------------------------------|------|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| WINDOW DEFINITION INPUT<br>WINDOW LENGTH IN   | A [9BH[3:0]]<br>B [CBH[3:0]] |      |     |     | A [9AH[7:0]]<br>B [CAH[7:0]] |      |        |     |     |     |     |     |
| Y (VERTICAL) DIRECTION <sup>(1)</sup>         | YS11                         | YS10 | YS9 | YS8 | YS7                          | YS6  | YS5    | YS4 | YS3 | YS2 | YS1 | YS0 |
| No input lines                                | 0                            | 0    | 0   | 0   | 0                            | 0    | 0      | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |
| 1 input line                                  | 0                            | 0    | 0   | 0   | 0                            | 0    | 0      | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 1   |
| Maximum possible number of input lines = 4095 | 1                            | 1    | 1   | 1   | 1                            | 1    | 1      | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   |

#### Note

1. For trigger condition: STRC[1:0] 90H[1:0] = 00; YO + YS > (number of input lines per field – 2), will result in field dropping. Other trigger conditions: YS > (number of input lines per field – 2), will result in field dropping.

### 15.7.8 SUBADDRESSES 9CH TO 9FH

Table 121 Horizontal output window length; register set A [9CH[7:0]; 9DH[3:0]] and B [CCH[7:0]; CDH[3:0]]

| HORIZONTAL OUTPUT   |                              |      |     |     | СО  | NTRO | L BITS | 3                  |     |     |     |     |
|---|------------------------------|------|-----|-----|-----|------|--------|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| ACQUISITION WINDOW DEFINITION NUMBER OF DESIRED OUTPUT PIXEL IN | A [9DH[3:0]]<br>B [CDH[3:0]] |      |     |     |     |      | _      | H[7:0]]<br>H[7:0]] |     |     |     |     |
| X (HORIZONTAL) DIRECTION(1)                                     | XD11                         | XD10 | XD9 | XD8 | XD7 | XD6  | XD5    | XD4                | XD3 | XD2 | XD1 | XD0 |
| No output   | 0                            | 0    | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0    | 0      | 0                  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |
| Odd lengths are allowed, but will be filled up to even lengths  | 0                            | 0    | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0    | 0      | 0                  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 1   |
| Maximum possible number of input pixels = 4095; note 2          | 1                            | 1    | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1    | 1      | 1                  | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   |

### Notes

- 1. Reference for counting are luminance samples.
- 2. If the desired output length is greater than the number of scaled output pixels, the last scaled pixel is repeated.

Table 122 Vertical output window length; register set A [9EH[7:0]; 9FH[3:0]] and B [CEH[7:0]; CFH[3:0]]

| VERTICAL OUTPUT ACQUISITION                            |                              |      |     |                              | CO  | NTRO | L BITS | 3   |     |     |     |     |
|--|------------------------------|------|-----|------------------------------|-----|------|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| WINDOW DEFINITION NUMBER OF DESIRED OUTPUT LINES IN    | A [9FH[3:0]]<br>B [CFH[3:0]] |      |     | A [9EH[7:0]]<br>B [CEH[7:0]] |     |      |        |     |     |     |     |     |
| Y (VERTICAL) DIRECTION                                 | YD11                         | YD10 | YD9 | YD8                          | YD7 | YD6  | YD5    | YD4 | YD3 | YD2 | YD1 | YD0 |
| No output  | 0                            | 0    | 0   | 0                            | 0   | 0    | 0      | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |
| 1 pixel  | 0                            | 0    | 0   | 0                            | 0   | 0    | 0      | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 1   |
| Maximum possible number of output lines = 4095; note 1 | 1                            | 1    | 1   | 1                            | 1   | 1    | 1      | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   |

### Note

1. If the desired output length is greater than the number of scaled output lines, the processing is cut.

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 15.7.9 SUBADDRESSES A0H TO A2H

Table 123 Horizontal prescaling; register set A [A0H[5:0]] and B [D0H[5:0]]

| HODIZONITAL INTEGED DRESCALING DATIO (VDSC) | CONTROL BITS D5 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|--|
| HORIZONTAL INTEGER PRESCALING RATIO (XPSC)  | XPSC5                 | XPSC4 | XPSC3 | XPSC2 | XPSC1 | XPSC0 |  |  |  |  |  |
| Not allowed                                 | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |  |  |
| Downscale = 1                               | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 1     |  |  |  |  |  |
| Downscale = $\frac{1}{2}$                   | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 1     | 0     |  |  |  |  |  |
|   |                       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |  |
| Downscale = $\frac{1}{63}$                  | 1                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 124 Accumulation length; register set A [A1H[5:0]] and B [D1H[5:0]]

| HORIZONTAL PRESCALER ACCUMULATION | CONTROL BITS D5 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|--|
| SEQUENCE LENGTH (XACL)            |                       | XACL4 | XACL3 | XACL2 | XACL1 | XACL0 |  |  |  |  |  |
| Accumulation length = 1           | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |  |  |
| Accumulation length = 2           | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 1     |  |  |  |  |  |
|                                   |                       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |  |
| Accumulation length = 64          | 1                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |  |  |  |  |

**Table 125** Prescaler DC gain and FIR prefilter control; register set A [A2H[7:4]] and B [D2H[7:4]] X = don't care.

| FIR PREFILTER CONTROL  | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D4 |       |      |      |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|-----------------------|-------|------|------|--|--|--|--|--|
| FIR PREFILIER CONTROL  | PFUV1                 | PFUV0 | PFY1 | PFY0 |  |  |  |  |  |
| Luminance FIR filter bypassed                                | Х                     | Х     | 0    | 0    |  |  |  |  |  |
| $H_y(z) = \frac{1}{4} (1 \ 2 \ 1)$                           | Х                     | Х     | 0    | 1    |  |  |  |  |  |
| $H_y(z) = \frac{1}{8} (-1 \ 1 \ 1.75 \ 4.5 \ 1.75 \ 1 \ -1)$ | Х                     | X     | 1    | 0    |  |  |  |  |  |
| $H_y(z) = \frac{1}{8} (1 \ 2 \ 2 \ 2 \ 1)$                   | Х                     | Х     | 1    | 1    |  |  |  |  |  |
| Chrominance FIR filter bypassed                              | 0                     | 0     | Х    | Х    |  |  |  |  |  |
| $H_uv(z) = \frac{1}{4} (1 \ 2 \ 1)$                          | 0                     | 1     | Χ    | Х    |  |  |  |  |  |
| $H_uv(z) = \frac{1}{32} (3 \ 8 \ 10 \ 8 \ 3)$                | 1                     | 0     | Х    | Х    |  |  |  |  |  |
| $H_uv(z) = \frac{1}{8} (1 \ 2 \ 2 \ 2 \ 1)$                  | 1                     | 1     | Х    | Х    |  |  |  |  |  |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

**Table 126** Prescaler DC gain and FIR prefilter control; register set A [A2H[3:0]] and B [D2H[3:0]] X = don't care.

| PRESCALED DO CAIN   |       | CONTROL B | ITS D3 TO D0 | )     |
|---|-------|-----------|--------------|-------|
| PRESCALER DC GAIN   | XC2_1 | XDCG2     | XDCG1        | XDCG0 |
| Prescaler output is renormalized by gain factor = 1   | Х     | 0         | 0            | 0     |
| Prescaler output is renormalized by gain factor = $\frac{1}{2}$   | Х     | 0         | 0            | 1     |
| Prescaler output is renormalized by gain factor = 1/4   | Х     | 0         | 1            | 0     |
| Prescaler output is renormalized by gain factor = ½   | Х     | 0         | 1            | 1     |
| Prescaler output is renormalized by gain factor = ½16   | Х     | 1         | 0            | 0     |
| Prescaler output is renormalized by gain factor = $\frac{1}{32}$  | Х     | 1         | 0            | 1     |
| Prescaler output is renormalized by gain factor = $\frac{1}{64}$  | Х     | 1         | 1            | 0     |
| Prescaler output is renormalized by gain factor = 1/128   | Х     | 1         | 1            | 1     |
| Weighting of all accumulated samples is factor '1';<br>e.g. XACL = 4 ⇒ sequence 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1               | 0     | Х         | Х            | Х     |
| Weighting of samples inside sequence is factor '2';<br>e.g. XACL = $4 \Rightarrow$ sequence $1 + 2 + 2 + 2 + 1$ | 1     | Х         | Х            | Х     |

### 15.7.10 SUBADDRESSES A4H TO A6H

Table 127 Luminance brightness control; register set A [A4H[7:0]] and B [D4H[7:0]]

| LUMINANCE           | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| BRIGHTNESS CONTROL  | BRIG7                 | BRIG6 | BRIG5 | BRIG4 | BRIG3 | BRIG2 | BRIG1 | BRIG0 |
| Value = 0           | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |
| Nominal value = 128 | 1                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |
| Value = 255         | 1                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |

### Table 128 Luminance contrast control; register set A [A5H[7:0]] and B [D5H[7:0]]

| LUMINANCE CONTRAST      |       |       | CC    | NTROL B | ITS D7 TO | D0    |       |       |
|-------------------------|-------|-------|-------|---------|-----------|-------|-------|-------|
| CONTROL                 | CONT7 | CONT6 | CONT5 | CONT4   | CONT3     | CONT2 | CONT1 | CONT0 |
| Gain = 0                | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0       | 0         | 0     | 0     | 0     |
| Gain = $\frac{1}{64}$   | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0       | 0         | 0     | 0     | 1     |
| Nominal gain = 64       | 0     | 1     | 0     | 0       | 0         | 0     | 0     | 0     |
| Gain = $\frac{127}{64}$ | 0     | 1     | 1     | 1       | 1         | 1     | 1     | 1     |

### Table 129 Chrominance saturation control; register set A [A6H[7:0]] and B [D6H[7:0]]

| CHROMINANCE             |       |       | CC    | NTROL B | TS D7 TO | D0    |       |       |
|-------------------------|-------|-------|-------|---------|----------|-------|-------|-------|
| SATURATION CONTROL      | SATN7 | SATN6 | SATN5 | SATN4   | SATN3    | SATN2 | SATN1 | SATN0 |
| Gain = 0                | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0       | 0        | 0     | 0     | 0     |
| Gain = $\frac{1}{64}$   | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0       | 0        | 0     | 0     | 1     |
| Nominal gain = 64       | 0     | 1     | 0     | 0       | 0        | 0     | 0     | 0     |
| Gain = $\frac{127}{64}$ | 0     | 1     | 1     | 1       | 1        | 1     | 1     | 1     |

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 15.7.11 SUBADDRESSES A8H TO AEH

Table 130 Horizontal luminance scaling increment; register set A [A8H[7:0]; A9H[7:0]] and B [D8H[7:0]; D9H[7:0]]

|   | CONTROL BITS                 |                              |                              |                              |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| HORIZONTAL LUMINANCE<br>SCALING INCREMENT                               | A [A9H[7:4]]<br>B [D9H[7:4]] | A [A9H[3:0]]<br>B [D9H[3:0]] | A [A8H[7:4]]<br>B [D8H[7:4]] | A [A8H[3:0]]<br>B [D8H[3:0]] |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | XSCY[15:12] <sup>(1)</sup>   | XSCY[11:8]                   | XSCY[7:4]                    | XSCY[3:0]                    |  |  |  |  |  |
| Scale = 1024/1 (theoretical) zoom                                       | 0000                         | 0000                         | 0000                         | 0000                         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Scale = $\frac{1024}{294}$ , lower limit defined by data path structure | 0000                         | 0001                         | 0010                         | 0110                         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Scale = 1024/ <sub>1023</sub> zoom                                      | 0000                         | 0011                         | 1111                         | 1111                         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Scale = 1, equals 1024  | 0000                         | 0100                         | 0000                         | 0000                         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Scale = 1024/ <sub>1025</sub> downscale                                 | 0000                         | 0100                         | 0000                         | 0001                         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Scale = 1024/8191 downscale   | 0001                         | 1111                         | 1111                         | 1111                         |  |  |  |  |  |

#### Note

Table 131 Horizontal luminance phase offset; register set A [AAH[7:0]] and B [DAH[7:0]]

| HORIZONTAL LUMINANCE PHASE                    |       | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |
|---|-------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|
| OFFSET  | XPHY7 | XPHY6                 | XPHY5 | XPHY4 | XPHY3 | XPHY2 | XPHY1 | XPHY0 |  |
| Offset = 0                                    | 0     | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |
| Offset = <sup>1</sup> / <sub>32</sub> pixel   | 0     | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 1     |  |
| Offset = $\frac{32}{32}$ = 1 pixel            | 0     | 0                     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |
| Offset = <sup>255</sup> / <sub>32</sub> pixel | 1     | 1                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |

Table 132 Horizontal chrominance scaling increment; register set A [ACH[7:0]; ADH[7:0]] and B [DCH[7:0]; DDH[7:0]]

|   | CONTROL BITS                 |                              |                              |                              |  |  |  |  |
|---|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| HORIZONTAL CHROMINANCE<br>SCALING INCREMENT | A [ADH[7:4]]<br>B [DDH[7:4]] | A [ADH[3:0]]<br>B [DDH[3:0]] | A [ACH[7:4]]<br>B [DCH[7:4]] | A [ACH[3:0]]<br>B [DCH[3:0]] |  |  |  |  |
|   | XSCC[15:12] <sup>(1)</sup>   | XSCC[11:8]                   | XSCC[7:4]                    | XSCC[3:0]                    |  |  |  |  |
| This value must be set to the               | 0000                         | 0000                         | 0000                         | 0000                         |  |  |  |  |
| luminance value ½XSCY[15:0]                 | 0000                         | 0000                         | 0000                         | 0001                         |  |  |  |  |
|   | 0001                         | 1111                         | 1111                         | 1111                         |  |  |  |  |

### Note

1. Bits XSCC[15:13] are reserved and are set to logic 0.

<sup>1.</sup> Bits XSCY[15:13] are reserved and are set to logic 0.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 133 Horizontal chrominance phase offset; register set A [AEH[7:0]] and B [DEH[7:0]]

| HORIZONTAL CHROMINANCE               |       | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |
|--------------------------------------|-------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|
| PHASE OFFSET                         | XPHC7 | XPHC6                 | XPHC5 | XPHC4 | XPHC3 | XPHC2 | XPHC1 | XPHC0 |  |
| This value must be set to ½XPHY[7:0] | 0     | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |
|                                      | 0     | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 1     |  |
|                                      | 1     | 1                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |

### 15.7.12 SUBADDRESSES BOH TO BFH

Table 134 Vertical luminance scaling increment; register set A [B0H[7:0]; B1H[7:0]] and B [E0H[7:0]; E1H[7:0]]

|   | CONTROL BITS                 |                              |                              |                              |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| VERTICAL LUMINANCE SCALING<br>INCREMENT | A [B1H[7:4]]<br>B [E1H[7:4]] | A [B1H[3:0]]<br>B [E1H[3:0]] | A [B0H[7:4]]<br>B [E0H[7:4]] | A [B0H[3:0]]<br>B [E0H[3:0]] |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | YSCY[15:12]                  | YSCY[11:8]                   | YSCY[7:4]                    | YSCY[3:0]                    |  |  |  |  |  |
| Scale = 1024/1 (theoretical) zoom       | 0000                         | 0000                         | 0000                         | 0001                         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Scale = 1024/1023 zoom                  | 0000                         | 0011                         | 1111                         | 1111                         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Scale = 1, equals 1024                  | 0000                         | 0100                         | 0000                         | 0000                         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Scale = 1024/1025 downscale             | 0000                         | 0100                         | 0000                         | 0001                         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Scale = 1/63.999 downscale              | 1111                         | 1111                         | 1111                         | 1111                         |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 135 Vertical chrominance scaling increment; register set A [B2H[7:0]; B3H[7:0]] and B [E2H[7:0]; E3H[7:0]]

|  | •                            |                              |                              |                              |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |                              | CONTROL BITS                 |                              |                              |  |  |  |  |  |
| VERTICAL CHROMINANCE<br>SCALING INCREMENT                | A [B3H[7:4]]<br>B [E3H[7:4]] | A [B3H[3:0]]<br>B [E3H[3:0]] | A [B2H[7:4]]<br>B [E2H[7:4]] | A [B2H[3:0]]<br>B [E2H[3:0]] |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | YSCC[15:12]                  | YSCC[11:8]                   | YSCC[7:4]                    | YSCC[3:0]                    |  |  |  |  |  |
| This value must be set to the luminance value YSCY[15:0] | 0000                         | 0000                         | 0000                         | 0001                         |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 1111                         | 1111                         | 1111                         | 1111                         |  |  |  |  |  |

**Table 136** Vertical scaling mode control; register set A [B4H[4 and 0]] and B [E4H[4 and 0]] X = don't care.

| VERTICAL SCALING MODE CONTROL   | CONTROL BI | TS D4 AND D0 |
|---|------------|--------------|
| VERTICAL SCALING MODE CONTROL   | YMIR       | YMODE        |
| Vertical scaling performs linear interpolation between lines                                | Х          | 0            |
| Vertical scaling performs higher order accumulating interpolation, better alias suppression | Х          | 1            |
| No mirroring  | 0          | X            |
| Lines are mirrored  | 1          | Х            |

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 137 Vertical chrominance phase offset '00'; register set A [B8H[7:0]] and B [E8H[7:0]]

| VERTICAL CHROMINANCE PHASE                    |       | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |
|---|-------|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|
| OFFSET  | YPC07 | YPC06                 | YPC05 | YPC04 | YPC03 | YPC02 | YPC01 | YPC00 |  |
| Offset = 0                                    | 0     | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |
| Offset = $\frac{32}{32}$ = 1 line             | 0     | 0                     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |
| Offset = <sup>255</sup> / <sub>32</sub> lines | 1     | 1                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |

Table 138 Vertical luminance phase offset '00'; register set A [BCH[7:0]] and B [ECH[7:0]]

| VERTICAL LUMINANCE PHASE                      | CONTROL BITS D7 TO D0 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |
|---|-----------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|
| OFFSET  | YPY07                 | YPY06 | YPY05 | YPY04 | YPY03 | YPY02 | YPY01 | YPY00 |  |  |  |
| Offset = 0                                    | 0                     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |
| Offset = $\frac{32}{32}$ = 1 line             | 0                     | 0     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |  |  |  |
| Offset = <sup>255</sup> / <sub>32</sub> lines | 1                     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |  |  |  |

### 16 PROGRAMMING START SET-UP

### 16.1 Decoder part

The given values force the following behaviour of the SAA7118 decoder part:

- The analog input Al11 expects an NTSC M, PAL B, D, G, H and I or SECAM signal in CVBS format; analog anti-alias filter and AGC active
- · Automatic field detection enabled
- Standard ITU 656 output format enabled on expansion (X) port
- · Contrast, brightness and saturation control in accordance with ITU standards
- · Adaptive comb filter for luminance and chrominance activated
- Pins LLC, LLC2, XTOUT, RTS0, RTS1 and RTCO are set to 3-state.

Table 139 Decoder part start set-up values for the three main standards

| SUB              | REGISTER               |   | \         | /ALUES (HEX             | )     |
|------------------|------------------------|---|-----------|-------------------------|-------|
| ADDRESS<br>(HEX) | FUNCTION               |   |           | PAL B, D,<br>G, H AND I | SECAM |
| 00               | chip version           | ID7 to ID4  | read only |                         |       |
| 01               | increment delay        | X, WPOFF, GUDL1, GUDL0 and IDEL3 to IDEL0               | 47        | 47                      | 47    |
| 02               | analog input control 1 | FUSE1, FUSE0 and MODE5 to MODE0                         | C0        | C0                      | C0    |
| 03               | analog input control 2 | X, HLNRS, VBSL, CPOFF, HOLDG,<br>GAFIX, GAI28 and GAI18 | 10        | 10                      | 10    |
| 04               | analog input control 3 | GAI17 to GAI10  | 90        | 90                      | 90    |
| 05               | analog input control 4 | GAI27 to GAI20  | 90        | 90                      | 90    |
| 06               | horizontal sync start  | HSB7 to HSB0  | EB        | EB                      | EB    |
| 07               | horizontal sync stop   | HSS7 to HSS0  | E0        | E0                      | E0    |
| 08               | sync control           | AUFD, FSEL, FOET, HTC1, HTC0,<br>HPLL, VNOI1 and VNOI0  | 98        | 98                      | 98    |

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

| SUB              | DEGISTED                                    |  | VALUES (HEX) |                         |       |  |  |  |
|------------------|---|--|--------------|-------------------------|-------|--|--|--|
| ADDRESS<br>(HEX) | REGISTER<br>FUNCTION                        | BIT NAME <sup>(1)</sup>                                      | NTSC M       | PAL B, D,<br>G, H AND I | SECAM |  |  |  |
| 09               | luminance control                           | BYPS, YCOMB, LDEL, LUBW and LUFI3 to LUFI0                   | 40           | 40                      | 1B    |  |  |  |
| 0A               | luminance brightness control                | DBRI7 to DBRI0   | 80           | 80                      | 80    |  |  |  |
| 0B               | luminance contrast control                  | DCON7 to DCON0   | 44           | 44                      | 44    |  |  |  |
| 0C               | chrominance saturation control              | DSAT7 to DSAT0   | 40           | 40                      | 40    |  |  |  |
| 0D               | chrominance hue control                     | HUEC7 to HUEC0   | 00           | 00                      | 00    |  |  |  |
| 0E               | chrominance control 1                       | CDTO, CSTD2 to CSTD0, DCVF, FCTC, AUTO0 and CCOMB            | 89           | 81                      | D0    |  |  |  |
| 0F               | chrominance gain control                    | ACGC and CGAIN6 to CGAIN0                                    | 2A           | 2A                      | 80    |  |  |  |
| 10               | chrominance control 2                       | OFFU1, OFFU0, OFFV1, OFFV0,<br>CHBW and LCBW2 to LCBW0       | 0E           | 06                      | 00    |  |  |  |
| 11               | mode/delay control                          | COLO, RTP1, HDEL1, HDEL0, RTP0 and YDEL2 to YDEL0            | 00           | 00                      | 00    |  |  |  |
| 12               | RT signal control                           | RTSE13 to RTSE10 and<br>RTSE03 to RTSE00                     | 00           | 00                      | 00    |  |  |  |
| 13               | RT/X-port output control                    | RTCE, XRHS, XRVS1, XRVS0, HLSEL and OFTS2 to OFTS0           | 00           | 00                      | 00    |  |  |  |
| 14               | analog/ADC/compatibility control            | CM99, UPTCV, AOSL1, AOSL0,<br>XTOUTE, AUTO1, APCK1 and APCK0 | 00           | 00                      | 00    |  |  |  |
| 15               | VGATE start, FID change                     | VSTA7 to VSTA0   | 11           | 11                      | 11    |  |  |  |
| 16               | VGATE stop                                  | VSTO7 to VSTO0   | FE           | FE                      | FE    |  |  |  |
| 17               | miscellaneous, VGATE configuration and MSBs | LLCE, LLC2E, LATY2 to LATY0, VGPS, VSTO8 and VSTA8           | C0           | C0                      | C0    |  |  |  |
| 18               | raw data gain control                       | RAWG7 to RAWG0   | 40           | 40                      | 40    |  |  |  |
| 19               | raw data offset control                     | RAWO7 to RAWO0   | 80           | 80                      | 80    |  |  |  |
| 1A to 1D         | reserved                                    | X, X, X, X, X, X, X  | 00           | 00                      | 00    |  |  |  |
| 1E               | status byte 1 video decoder                 | -, HLCK, SLTCA, GLIMT, GLIMB, WIPA, DCSTD1 and DCSTD0        |              | read only               |       |  |  |  |
| 1F               | status byte 2 video decoder                 | INTL, HLVLN, FIDT, -, TYPE3,<br>COLSTR, COPRO and RDCAP      |              | read only               |       |  |  |  |

### Note

1. All X values must be set to logic 0.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 16.2 Component video part and interrupt mask

The given values force the following behaviour of the SAA7118 component video part:

• The analog inputs Al11, Al21, Al31 and Al41 expect an RGBS signal; analog anti-alias filters and AGC for the sync channel active

• For other settings see decoder part (Section 16.1).

Table 140 Component video part and interrupt mask start set-up values

| SUB<br>ADDRESS<br>(HEX) | REGISTER<br>FUNCTION         | BIT NAME <sup>(1)</sup>                                     | VALUES<br>(HEX) |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|---|-----------------|
| 23                      | analog input control 5       | AOSL2, ADPE, EXCLK, REFA, X, EXMCE, GAI48 and GAI38         | 00              |
| 24                      | analog input control 6       | GAI37 to GAI30  | 90              |
| 25                      | analog input control 7       | GAI47 to GAI40  | 90              |
| 26 to 28                | reserved                     | X, X, X, X, X, X, X   | 00              |
| 29                      | component delay              | FSWE, FSWI, FSWDL1, FSWDL0, CMFI, CPDL2 to CPDL0            | 40              |
| 2A                      | component brightness control | CBRI7 to CBRI0  | 80              |
| 2B                      | component contrast control   | CCON7 to CCON0  | 40              |
| 2C                      | component saturation control | CSAT7 to CSAT0  | 47              |
| 2D                      | interrupt mask 1             | X, X, X, MVPSV, MPPV, MCCV, X and MERROF                    | 00              |
| 2E                      | interrupt mask 2             | X, MHLCK, X, X, X, MDCSTD1 and MDCSTD0                      | 00              |
| 2F                      | interrupt mask 3             | MINTL, MHLVLN, MFIDT, X, MTYPE3, MCOLSTR, MCOPRO and MRDCAP | 00              |

### Note

1. All X values must be set to logic 0.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 16.3 Audio clock generation part

The given values force the following behaviour of the SAA7118 audio clock generation part:

- Used crystal is 24.576 MHz
- Expected field frequency is 59.94 Hz (e.g. NTSC M standard)
- Generated audio master clock frequency at pin AMCLK is 256 × 44.1 kHz = 11.2896 MHz
- AMCLK is externally connected to AMXCLK [short-cut between pins P11 (72) and M12 (76)]
- ASCLK = 32 × 44.1 kHz = 1.4112 MHz
- ALRCLK is 44.1 kHz.

Table 141 Audio clock part set-up values

| SUB              |   | (1)                                 |   |   | S | TA | RT | VAL | .UE | S |     |
|------------------|---|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|----|----|-----|-----|---|-----|
| ADDRESS<br>(HEX) | REGISTER FUNCTION                                   | BIT NAME <sup>(1)</sup>             | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4  | 3  | 2   | 1   | 0 | HEX |
| 30               | audio master clock cycles per field; bits 7 to 0    | ACPF7 to ACPF0                      | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1  | 1  | 1   | 0   | 0 | ВС  |
| 31               | audio master clock cycles per field; bits 15 to 8   | ACPF15 to ACPF8                     | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1   | 1   | 1 | DF  |
| 32               | audio master clock cycles per field; bits 17 and 16 | X, X, X, X, X, ACPF17<br>and ACPF16 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0  | 0  | 0   | 1   | 0 | 02  |
| 33               | reserved  | X, X, X, X, X, X, X                 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0  | 0  | 0   | 0   | 0 | 00  |
| 34               | audio master clock nominal increment; bits 7 to 0   | ACNI7 to ACNI0                      | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1   | 0   | 1 | CD  |
| 35               | audio master clock nominal increment; bits 15 to 8  | ACNI15 to ACNI8                     | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1   | 0   | 0 | CC  |
| 36               | audio master clock nominal increment; bits 21 to 16 | X, X, ACNI21 to ACNI16              | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1  | 1  | 0   | 1   | 0 | ЗА  |
| 37               | reserved  | X, X, X, X, X, X, X                 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0  | 0  | 0   | 0   | 0 | 00  |
| 38               | clock ratio AMXCLK to ASCLK                         | X, X, SDIV5 to SDIV0                | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0  | 0  | 0   | 1   | 1 | 03  |
| 39               | clock ratio ASCLK to ALRCLK                         | X, X, LRDIV5 to LRDIV0              | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1  | 0  | 0   | 0   | 0 | 10  |
| 3A               | audio clock generator basic set-up                  | X, X, X, X, APLL, AMVR, LRPH, SCPH  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0  | 0  | 0   | 0   | 0 | 00  |
| 3B to 3F         | reserved  | X, X, X, X, X, X, X                 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0  | 0  | 0   | 0   | 0 | 00  |

### Note

1. All X values must be set to logic 0.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 16.4 Data slicer and data type control part

The given values force the following behaviour of the SAA7118 VBI-data slicer part:

- Closed captioning data are expected at line 21 of field 1 (60 Hz/525 line system)
- · All other lines are processed as active video
- Sliced data are framed by ITU 656 like SAV/EAV sequence (DID[5:0] = 3EH ⇒ MSB of SAV/EAV = 1).

Table 142 Data slicer start set-up values

| SUB              |  |  |                    |   | 5 | STA | RT | VAL | .UE | S |                   |
|------------------|--|--|--------------------|---|---|-----|----|-----|-----|---|-------------------|
| ADDRESS<br>(HEX) | REGISTER FUNCTION  | BIT NAME <sup>(1)</sup>                    |                    | 6 | 5 | 4   | 3  | 2   | 1   | 0 | HEX               |
| 40               | slicer control 1   | X, HAM_N, FCE, HUNT_N, X, X, X, X          | 0                  | 1 | 0 | 0   | 0  | 0   | 0   | 0 | 40                |
| 41 to 53         | line control register 2 to 20                            | LCRn_7 to LCRn_0 (n = 2 to 20)             | 1                  | 1 | 1 | 1   | 1  | 1   | 1   | 1 | FF                |
| 54               | line control register 21                                 | LCR21_7 to LCR21_0                         | 0                  | 1 | 0 | 1   | 1  | 1   | 1   | 1 | 5F                |
| 55 to 57         | line control register 22 to 24                           | LCRn_7 to LCRn_0 (n = 22 to 24)            | 1                  | 1 | 1 | 1   | 1  | 1   | 1   | 1 | FF                |
| 58               | programmable framing code                                | FC7 to FC0                                 | 0                  | 0 | 0 | 0   | 0  | 0   | 0   | 0 | 00                |
| 59               | horizontal offset for slicer                             | HOFF7 to HOFF0                             | 0                  | 1 | 0 | 0   | 0  | 1   | 1   | 1 | 47                |
| 5A               | vertical offset for slicer                               | VOFF7 to VOFF0                             | 0                  | 0 | 0 | 0   | 0  | 1   | 1   | 0 | 06(2)             |
| 5B               | field offset and MSBs for horizontal and vertical offset | FOFF, RECODE, X, VOFF8, X, HOFF10 to HOFF8 | 1                  | 0 | 0 | 0   | 0  | 0   | 1   | 1 | 83 <sup>(2)</sup> |
| 5C               | reserved   | X, X, X, X, X, X, X                        | 0                  | 0 | 0 | 0   | 0  | 0   | 0   | 0 | 00                |
| 5D               | header and data identification code control              | FVREF, X, DID5 to DID0                     | 0                  | 0 | 1 | 1   | 1  | 1   | 1   | 0 | 3E                |
| 5E               | sliced data identification code                          | X, X, SDID5 to SDID0                       | 0                  | 0 | 0 | 0   | 0  | 0   | 0   | 0 | 00                |
| 5F               | reserved   | X, X, X, X, X, X, X                        | 0                  | 0 | 0 | 0   | 0  | 0   | 0   | 0 | 00                |
| 60               | slicer status byte 0                                     | -, FC8V, FC7V, VPSV, PPV, CCV,<br>-, -     | read-only register |   |   |     |    |     |     |   |                   |
| 61               | slicer status byte 1                                     | -, -, F21_N, LN8 to LN4                    | read-only register |   |   |     |    |     |     |   |                   |
| 62               | slicer status byte 2                                     | LN3 to LN0, DT3 to DT0                     | read-only register |   |   |     |    |     |     |   |                   |

### **Notes**

- 1. All X values must be set to logic 0.
- 2. Changes for 50 Hz/625 line systems: subaddress 5AH = 03H and subaddress 5BH = 03H.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 16.5 Scaler and interfaces

Table 143 shows some examples for the scaler programming with:

- prsc = prescale ratio
- fisc = fine scale ratio
- vsc = vertical scale ratio.

The ratio is defined as:  $\frac{\text{number of input pixel}}{\text{number of output pixel}}$ 

In the following settings the VBI-data slicer is inactive. To activate the VBI-data slicer, VITX[1:0] 86H[7:6] has to be set to '11'. Depending on the VBI-data slicer settings, the sliced VBI-data is inserted after the end of the scaled video lines, if the regions of VBI-data slicer and scaler overlaps.

To compensate the running-in of the vertical scaler, the vertical input window lengths are extended by 2 to 290 lines, respectively 242 lines for XS, but the scaler increment calculations are done with 288, respectively 240 lines.

#### 16.5.1 TRIGGER CONDITION

For trigger condition STRC[1:0] 90H[1:0] not equal to '00'.

If the value of (YO + YS) is greater than or equal to 262 (NTSC), respectively 312 (PAL) the output field rate is reduced to 30 Hz, respectively 25 Hz.

Horizontal and vertical offsets (XO and YO) have to be used to adjust the displayed video in the display window. As this adjustment is application dependent, the listed values are only dummy values.

#### 16.5.2 MAXIMUM ZOOM FACTOR

The maximum zoom factor is dependent on the back-end data rate and therefore back-end clock and data format dependent (8 or 16-bit output). The maximum horizontal zoom is limited to approximately 3.5, due to internal data path restrictions.

16.5.3 EXAMPLES

Table 143 Example of configurations

| EXAMPLE<br>NUMBER | SCALER SOURCE AND REFERENCE EVENTS  | INPUT<br>WINDOW | OUTPUT<br>WINDOW | SCALE<br>RATIOS                            |
|-------------------|---|-----------------|------------------|--|
| 1                 | analog input to 8-bit I-port output, with SAV/EAV codes, 8-bit serial byte stream decoder output at X-port; acquisition trigger at falling edge vertical and rising edge horizontal reference signal; H and V-gates on IGPH and IGPV, IGP0 = VBI sliced data flag, IGP1 = FIFO almost full, level ≥24, IDQ qualifier logic 1 active         | 720 × 240       | 720 × 240        | prsc = 1;<br>fisc = 1;<br>vsc = 1          |
| 2                 | analog input to 16-bit output, without SAV/EAV codes, Yon I-port, C <sub>B</sub> -C <sub>R</sub> on H-port and decoder output at X-port; acquisition trigger at falling edge vertical and rising edge horizontal reference signal; H and V-pulses on IGPH and IGPV, output FID on IGP0, IGP1 fixed to logic 1, IDQ qualifier logic 0 active | 704 × 288       | 768 × 288        | prsc = 1;<br>fisc = 0.91667;<br>vsc = 1    |
| 3                 | X-port input 8-bit with SAV/EAV codes, no reference signals on XRH and XRV, XCLK as gated clock; field detection and acquisition trigger on different events; acquisition triggers at rising edge vertical and rising edge horizontal; I-port output 8-bit with SAV/EAV codes like example number 1   | 720 × 240       | 352 × 288        | prsc = 2;<br>fisc = 1.022;<br>vsc = 0.8333 |
| 4                 | X-port and H-port for 16-bit Y- $C_B$ - $C_R$ 4 : 2 : 2 input (if no 16-bit output selected); XRH and XRV as references; field detection and acquisition trigger at falling edge vertical and rising edge horizontal; I-port output 8-bit with SAV/EAV codes, but Y only output   | 720 × 288       | 200 × 80         | prsc = 2;<br>fisc = 1.8;<br>vsc = 3.6      |

## Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

Table 144 Scaler and interface configuration example

| I <sup>2</sup> C-BUS |  | EXAM    | PLE 1 | EXAM | PLE 2 | EXAM | IPLE 3 | EXAM | PLE 4 |
|----------------------|--|---------|-------|------|-------|------|--------|------|-------|
| ADDRESS<br>(HEX)     | MAIN FUNCTIONALITY                               | HEX     | DEC   | HEX  | DEC   | HEX  | DEC    | HEX  | DEC   |
| Global sett          |  |         |       |      |       |      |        |      |       |
| 80                   | task enable, IDQ and back-end clock definition   | 10      | _     | 10   | _     | 10   | _      | 10   | _     |
| 83                   | XCLK output phase and X-port output enable       | 01      | _     | 01   | _     | 00   | _      | 00   | _     |
| 84                   | IGPH, IGPV, IGP0 and IGP1 output definition      | A0      | _     | C5   | _     | A0   | _      | A0   | _     |
| 85                   | signal polarity control and I-port byte swapping | 10      | _     | 09   | _     | 10   | _      | 10   | _     |
| 86                   | FIFO flag thresholds and video/text arbitration  | 45      | _     | 40   | _     | 45   | _      | 45   | _     |
| 87                   | ICLK and IDQ output phase and I-port enable      | 01      | _     | 01   | _     | 01   | _      | 01   | _     |
| 88                   | power save control and software reset            | F0      | _     | F0   | _     | F0   | _      | F0   | _     |
| Task A: sca          | aler input configuration and output format s     | ettings |       |      |       |      |        |      |       |
| 90                   | task handling                                    | 00      | _     | 00   | _     | 00   | _      | 00   | _     |
| 91                   | scaler input source and format definition        | 08      | _     | 08   | _     | 18   | _      | 38   | _     |
| 92                   | reference signal definition at scaler input      | 10      | _     | 10   | _     | 10   | _      | 10   | _     |
| 93                   | I-port output formats and configuration          | 80      | _     | 40   | _     | 80   | _      | 84   | _     |
| Input and o          | output window definition                         |         |       |      |       |      |        |      |       |
| 94                   | horizontal input offset (XO)                     | 10      | 16    | 10   | 16    | 10   | 16     | 10   | 16    |
| 95                   |  | 00      | _     | 00   | _     | 00   | _      | 00   | _     |
| 96                   | horizontal input (source) window length (XS)     | D0      | 720   | C0   | 704   | D0   | 720    | D0   | 720   |
| 97                   |  | 02      | _     | 02   | _     | 02   | _      | 02   | _     |
| 98                   | vertical input offset (YO)                       | 0A      | 10    | 0A   | 10    | 0A   | 10     | 0A   | 10    |
| 99                   |  | 00      | _     | 00   | _     | 00   | _      | 00   | _     |
| 9A                   | vertical input (source) window length (YS)       | F2      | 242   | 22   | 290   | F2   | 242    | 22   | 290   |
| 9B                   |  | 00      | _     | 01   | _     | 00   | _      | 01   | _     |
| 9C                   | horizontal output (destination) window           | D0      | 720   | 00   | 768   | 60   | 352    | C8   | 200   |
| 9D                   | length (XD)                                      | 02      | _     | 03   | _     | 01   | _      | 00   | _     |
| 9E                   | vertical output (destination) window             | F0      | 240   | 20   | 288   | 20   | 288    | 50   | 80    |
| 9F                   | length (YD)                                      | 00      |       | 01   | _     | 01   | _      | 00   | _     |

# Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

SAA7118

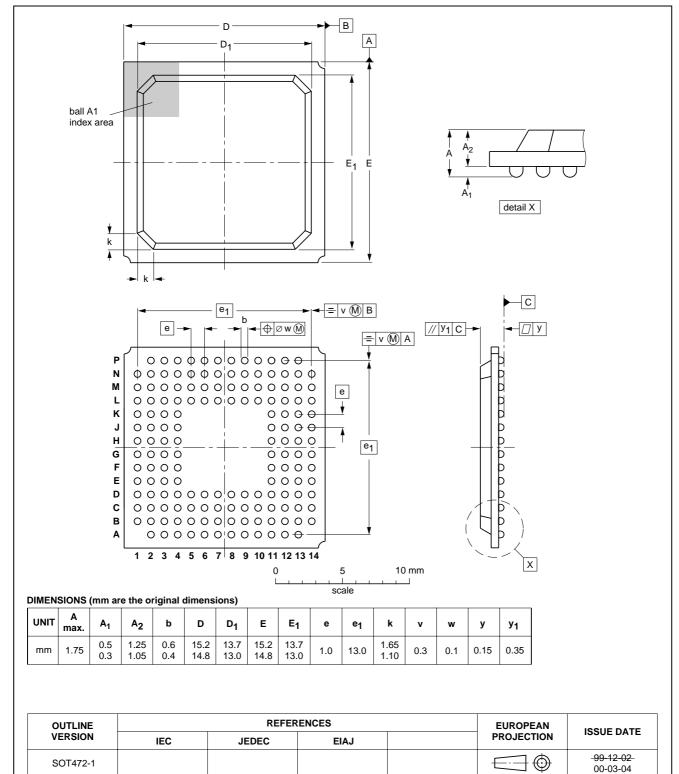
| I <sup>2</sup> C-BUS    |  | EXAM   | PLE 1 | EXAM | IPLE 2 | EXAM | IPLE 3 | EXAM | PLE 4 |
|-------------------------|--|--|-------|------|--------|------|--------|------|-------|
| ADDRESS<br>(HEX)        | MAIN FUNCTIONALITY   | HEX  | DEC   | HEX  | DEC    | HEX  | DEC    | HEX  | DEC   |
| Prefiltering            | and prescaling   | -  |       | -    |        |      |        |      |       |
| A0                      | integer prescale (value '00' not allowed)  | 01   | _     | 01   | _      | 02   | _      | 02   | _     |
| A1                      | accumulation length for prescaler  | 00   | _     | 00   | _      | 02   | _      | 03   | _     |
| A2                      | FIR prefilter and prescaler DC normalization   | 00   | _     | 00   | _      | AA   | _      | F2   | _     |
| A4                      | scaler brightness control  | 80   | 128   | 80   | 128    | 80   | 128    | 80   | 128   |
| A5                      | scaler contrast control  | 40   | 64    | 40   | 64     | 40   | 64     | 11   | 17    |
| A6                      | scaler saturation control  | 40   | 64    | 40   | 64     | 40   | 64     | 11   | 17    |
| Horizontal <sub>I</sub> | phase scaling  |  |       |      |        | •    | •      |      |       |
| A8                      | horizontal scaling increment for luminance   | 00   | 1024  | AA   | 938    | 18   | 1048   | 34   | 1844  |
| A9                      |  |  | _     | 03   | _      | 04   | _      | 07   | _     |
| AA                      | horizontal phase offset luminance  | 00   | _     | 00   | _      | 00   | _      | 00   | _     |
| AC                      | horizontal scaling increment for   | 00   | 512   | D5   | 469    | 0C   | 524    | 9A   | 922   |
| AD                      | chrominance  | 02   | _     | 01   | _      | 02   | _      | 03   | _     |
| AE                      | horizontal phase offset chrominance  | 00   | _     | 00   | _      | 00   | _      | 00   | _     |
| Vertical sca            | ıling  |  |       |      |        |      |        |      |       |
| В0                      | vertical scaling increment for luminance   | 00   | 1024  | 00   | 1024   | 55   | 853    | 66   | 3686  |
| B1                      |  | 04   | _     | 04   | _      | 03   | _      | 0E   | _     |
| B2                      | vertical scaling increment for chrominance   | 00   | 1024  | 00   | 1024   | 55   | 853    | 66   | 3686  |
| В3                      |  | 04   | _     | 04   | _      | 03   | _      | 0E   | _     |
| B4                      | vertical scaling mode control  | 00   | _     | 00   | _      | 00   | _      | 01   | _     |
| B8 to BF                | vertical phase offsets luminance and chrominance (need to be used for interlace correct scaled output) | start with B8 to BF at 00H, if there are no problems with the interlaced scaled output optimize according to Section 8.4.3.2 |       |      |        |      |        |      |       |

**SAA7118** 

### 17 PACKAGE OUTLINES

BGA156: plastic ball grid array package; 156 balls; body 15 x 15 x 1.15 mm

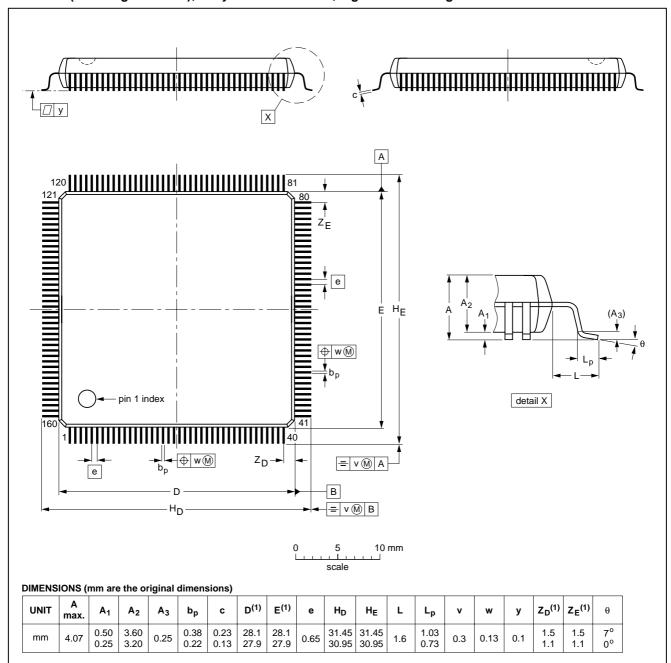
SOT472-1



**SAA7118** 

QFP160: plastic quad flat package; 160 leads (lead length 1.6 mm); body 28 x 28 x 3.4 mm; high stand-off height

SOT322-2



#### Note

1. Plastic or metal protrusions of 0.25 mm maximum per side are not included.

| OUTLINE  |        | REFER  | EUROPEAN ISSUE DATE |  |            |                                 |
|----------|--------|--------|---------------------|--|------------|---------------------------------|
| VERSION  | IEC    | JEDEC  | EIAJ                |  | PROJECTION | ISSUE DATE                      |
| SOT322-2 | 135E12 | MS-022 |                     |  |            | <del>99-11-03</del><br>00-01-19 |

**SAA7118** 

#### 18 SOLDERING

### 18.1 Introduction to soldering surface mount packages

This text gives a very brief insight to a complex technology. A more in-depth account of soldering ICs can be found in our "Data Handbook IC26; Integrated Circuit Packages" (document order number 9398 652 90011).

There is no soldering method that is ideal for all surface mount IC packages. Wave soldering can still be used for certain surface mount ICs, but it is not suitable for fine pitch SMDs. In these situations reflow soldering is recommended.

### 18.2 Reflow soldering

Reflow soldering requires solder paste (a suspension of fine solder particles, flux and binding agent) to be applied to the printed-circuit board by screen printing, stencilling or pressure-syringe dispensing before package placement.

Several methods exist for reflowing; for example, convection or convection/infrared heating in a conveyor type oven. Throughput times (preheating, soldering and cooling) vary between 100 and 200 seconds depending on heating method.

Typical reflow peak temperatures range from 215 to 250 °C. The top-surface temperature of the packages should preferable be kept below 220 °C for thick/large packages, and below 235 °C for small/thin packages.

### 18.3 Wave soldering

Conventional single wave soldering is not recommended for surface mount devices (SMDs) or printed-circuit boards with a high component density, as solder bridging and non-wetting can present major problems.

To overcome these problems the double-wave soldering method was specifically developed.

If wave soldering is used the following conditions must be observed for optimal results:

- Use a double-wave soldering method comprising a turbulent wave with high upward pressure followed by a smooth laminar wave.
- For packages with leads on two sides and a pitch (e):
  - larger than or equal to 1.27 mm, the footprint longitudinal axis is **preferred** to be parallel to the transport direction of the printed-circuit board;
  - smaller than 1.27 mm, the footprint longitudinal axis must be parallel to the transport direction of the printed-circuit board.

The footprint must incorporate solder thieves at the downstream end.

 For packages with leads on four sides, the footprint must be placed at a 45° angle to the transport direction of the printed-circuit board. The footprint must incorporate solder thieves downstream and at the side corners.

During placement and before soldering, the package must be fixed with a droplet of adhesive. The adhesive can be applied by screen printing, pin transfer or syringe dispensing. The package can be soldered after the adhesive is cured.

Typical dwell time is 4 seconds at 250 °C. A mildly-activated flux will eliminate the need for removal of corrosive residues in most applications.

### 18.4 Manual soldering

Fix the component by first soldering two diagonally-opposite end leads. Use a low voltage (24 V or less) soldering iron applied to the flat part of the lead. Contact time must be limited to 10 seconds at up to  $300\ ^{\circ}$ C.

When using a dedicated tool, all other leads can be soldered in one operation within 2 to 5 seconds between 270 and 320  $^{\circ}$ C.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

### 18.5 Suitability of surface mount IC packages for wave and reflow soldering methods

| PACKAGE   | SOLDERING METHOD                  |                       |  |  |  |
|---|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|--|--|--|
| PACKAGE   | WAVE                              | REFLOW <sup>(1)</sup> |  |  |  |
| BGA, HBGA, LFBGA, SQFP, TFBGA                       | not suitable                      | suitable              |  |  |  |
| HBCC, HLQFP, HSQFP, HSOP, HTQFP, HTSSOP, HVQFN, SMS | not suitable <sup>(2)</sup>       | suitable              |  |  |  |
| PLCC <sup>(3)</sup> , SO, SOJ                       | suitable                          | suitable              |  |  |  |
| LQFP, QFP, TQFP                                     | not recommended <sup>(3)(4)</sup> | suitable              |  |  |  |
| SSOP, TSSOP, VSO                                    | not recommended <sup>(5)</sup>    | suitable              |  |  |  |

#### **Notes**

- 1. All surface mount (SMD) packages are moisture sensitive. Depending upon the moisture content, the maximum temperature (with respect to time) and body size of the package, there is a risk that internal or external package cracks may occur due to vaporization of the moisture in them (the so called popcorn effect). For details, refer to the Drypack information in the "Data Handbook IC26; Integrated Circuit Packages; Section: Packing Methods".
- 2. These packages are not suitable for wave soldering as a solder joint between the printed-circuit board and heatsink (at bottom version) can not be achieved, and as solder may stick to the heatsink (on top version).
- 3. If wave soldering is considered, then the package must be placed at a 45° angle to the solder wave direction. The package footprint must incorporate solder thieves downstream and at the side corners.
- 4. Wave soldering is only suitable for LQFP, TQFP and QFP packages with a pitch (e) equal to or larger than 0.8 mm; it is definitely not suitable for packages with a pitch (e) equal to or smaller than 0.65 mm.
- 5. Wave soldering is only suitable for SSOP and TSSOP packages with a pitch (e) equal to or larger than 0.65 mm; it is definitely not suitable for packages with a pitch (e) equal to or smaller than 0.5 mm.

### Multistandard video decoder with adaptive comb filter and component video input

**SAA7118** 

#### 19 DATA SHEET STATUS

| DATA SHEET STATUS         | PRODUCT<br>STATUS | DEFINITIONS <sup>(1)</sup>   |
|---------------------------|-------------------|--|
| Objective specification   | Development       | This data sheet contains the design target or goal specifications for product development. Specification may change in any manner without notice.  |
| Preliminary specification | Qualification     | This data sheet contains preliminary data, and supplementary data will be published at a later date. Philips Semiconductors reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice in order to improve design and supply the best possible product. |
| Product specification     | Production        | This data sheet contains final specifications. Philips Semiconductors reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice in order to improve design and supply the best possible product.   |

#### Note

Please consult the most recently issued data sheet before initiating or completing a design.

### 20 DEFINITIONS

**Short-form specification** — The data in a short-form specification is extracted from a full data sheet with the same type number and title. For detailed information see the relevant data sheet or data handbook.

Limiting values definition — Limiting values given are in accordance with the Absolute Maximum Rating System (IEC 60134). Stress above one or more of the limiting values may cause permanent damage to the device. These are stress ratings only and operation of the device at these or at any other conditions above those given in the Characteristics sections of the specification is not implied. Exposure to limiting values for extended periods may affect device reliability.

Application information — Applications that are described herein for any of these products are for illustrative purposes only. Philips Semiconductors make no representation or warranty that such applications will be suitable for the specified use without further testing or modification.

#### 21 DISCLAIMERS

Life support applications — These products are not designed for use in life support appliances, devices, or systems where malfunction of these products can reasonably be expected to result in personal injury. Philips Semiconductors customers using or selling these products for use in such applications do so at their own risk and agree to fully indemnify Philips Semiconductors for any damages resulting from such application.

Right to make changes — Philips Semiconductors reserves the right to make changes, without notice, in the products, including circuits, standard cells, and/or software, described or contained herein in order to improve design and/or performance. Philips Semiconductors assumes no responsibility or liability for the use of any of these products, conveys no licence or title under any patent, copyright, or mask work right to these products, and makes no representations or warranties that these products are free from patent, copyright, or mask work right infringement, unless otherwise specified.

### 22 PURCHASE OF PHILIPS I2C COMPONENTS



Purchase of Philips I<sup>2</sup>C components conveys a license under the Philips' I<sup>2</sup>C patent to use the components in the I<sup>2</sup>C system provided the system conforms to the I<sup>2</sup>C specification defined by Philips. This specification can be ordered using the code 9398 393 40011.